

Bit by Bit

# Connect

الصف الخامس الابتدائي  
الفصل الدراسي الثاني

دليل ولي الأمر Parents' Guide



Primary  
**5**

2<sup>nd</sup>.  
Term

A B C



Egytian Knowledge Bank  
بنك المعرفة المصري



2030  
EGYPT VISION

QR Codes

Listen to  
Vocabulary &  
Audioscripts



التوزيع: ١٠ شارع كامل صدقي - الفجالة - القاهرة

تليفون: ٢٥٩١٩١٦٥



للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

للاستعلام وإبداء الآراء والإقتراحات - الإدارة/ تليفون: ٢٥٨٨٠١٠٢

2023



### Aims of the Parents' Guide

This Parents' Guide creates an enjoyable and engaging environment full of fun engaging activities, to encourage the students' language development.

The Parents' Guide aims to give Primary Five students the tools they need to develop their knowledge and use of English, and to increase their grasp of both the spoken and the written language, including basic phonetic sounds.

The course has been carefully designed to support whole child development; it not only supports the language development of the child, but also attends to their physical, cognitive, social and emotional needs.

Therefore, the activities combine life skills, values, issues and challenges, and Content and Language Integrated Learning (CLIL) with games, stories and projects. This is done in order to create a comprehensive, successful learning experience.

### أهداف دليل ولي الأمر

يقدم دليل ولي الأمر إطار شيق وجذاب مع كثير من الأنشطة الممتعة وذلك لتشجيع التلاميذ في تطوير اللغة.

يهدف دليل ولي الأمر إلى توفير الأدوات المطلوبة لتلاميذ الصف الخامس الابتدائي لزيادة معلوماتهم وتطوير استخدامهم للغة الإنجليزية سواء في مهارات التحدث أو الكتابة بالإضافة إلى أصوات النطق الأساسية. وقد تم إعداد هذا المنهج بعناية لمساعدة تطوير التلاميذ بشكل عام ليس في اللغة وحسب ولكن أيضاً يقدم لهم ما يلبي احتياجاتهم النفسية والمعرفية والاجتماعية والعاطفية.

ولذلك فإن الأنشطة تجمع بين المهارات الحياتية والقيم والقضايا والتحديات وتم تضمين المحتوى بالعباب وقصص ومشروعات. وتم عمل كل ذلك لخلق مجال تعلم متكامل ونجاح.

### Teaching phonics

The teaching of phonics plays an important role in developing literacy. An awareness of phonics facilitates the students' ability to discriminate between similar sounds and this develops their listening skills.

### تدريس الصوتيات

يلعب تدريس الصوتيات دوراً هاماً في تطوير معرفة القراءة والكتابة. يعمل الوعي بالصوتيات على تسهيل قدرة التلاميذ على التمييز بين الأصوات المماثلة وبذلك يطور مهارات الاستماع الخاصة بهم.

Stories and activities promote and develop critical thinking and problem solving skills. The aim is to make thinking fun for children. While learning English, specific attention should be dedicated to the development of a child's ability to recall information, ask questions, make decisions, solve problems, evaluate and organize information. Within the materials as a whole, the students actively contribute to their own cognitive development, which helps to create confident, smart, early thinkers.

تعمل القصص والأنشطة على تعزيز وتطوير مهارات التفكير النقدي وحل المشكلات. الهدف هو جعل التفكير ممتع للأطفال. أثناء تعلم اللغة الإنجليزية، ينبغي تخصيص اهتمام خاص لتطوير قدرة الطفل على تذكر المعلومات وطرح الأسئلة واتخاذ القرارات وحل المشكلات وتقييم وتنظيم المعلومات. وفي المادة الدراسية المقدمة، يساهم التلاميذ بشكل فعال في تطويرهم المعرفي، مما يساعد على خلق مفكرين مبتكرين وأثقيين وأذكياء.

### Teaching values

Values education is the teaching of values such as tolerance, honesty, cooperation and independence. These values help to create good citizens, and are very important development step for children of this age.

### تعليم القيم

إن تعليم القيم هو تعليم القيم مثل التسامح والصدق والتعاون والاستقلال. هذه القيم تساعد على خلق مواطنين صالحين، وهي خطوة إنمائية مهمة جداً للأطفال في هذا العمر.

● The major areas identified by the framework are:

- 1- Cultural responsibility issues  
١- قضايا المسؤولية الثقافية
- 2- Environmental responsibility issues  
٢- قضايا المسؤولية عن البيئة
- 3- Self-reflection issues  
٣- قضايا التأمل الذاتي
- 4- Making sensible choices issues  
٤- قضايا اتخاذ القرارات الصائبة





# Contents

## Part 1

- Punctuation
- How to write a paragraph
- How to answer the comprehension questions

## Part 2

### Theme 3: My society

- Unit 7 Homes in Egypt  
Unit 8 At the doctor's  
Unit 9 My favorite animal

#### Review 3

**Non-fiction reader:** Are There Endangered Animals in Egypt?

### Theme 4: Being responsible

- Unit 10 Let's visit Egypt  
Unit 11 Getting out in the fresh air  
Unit 12 Vacations

#### Review 4

#### Project

**Fiction reader:** A Fantastic Family Adventure

## Part 3

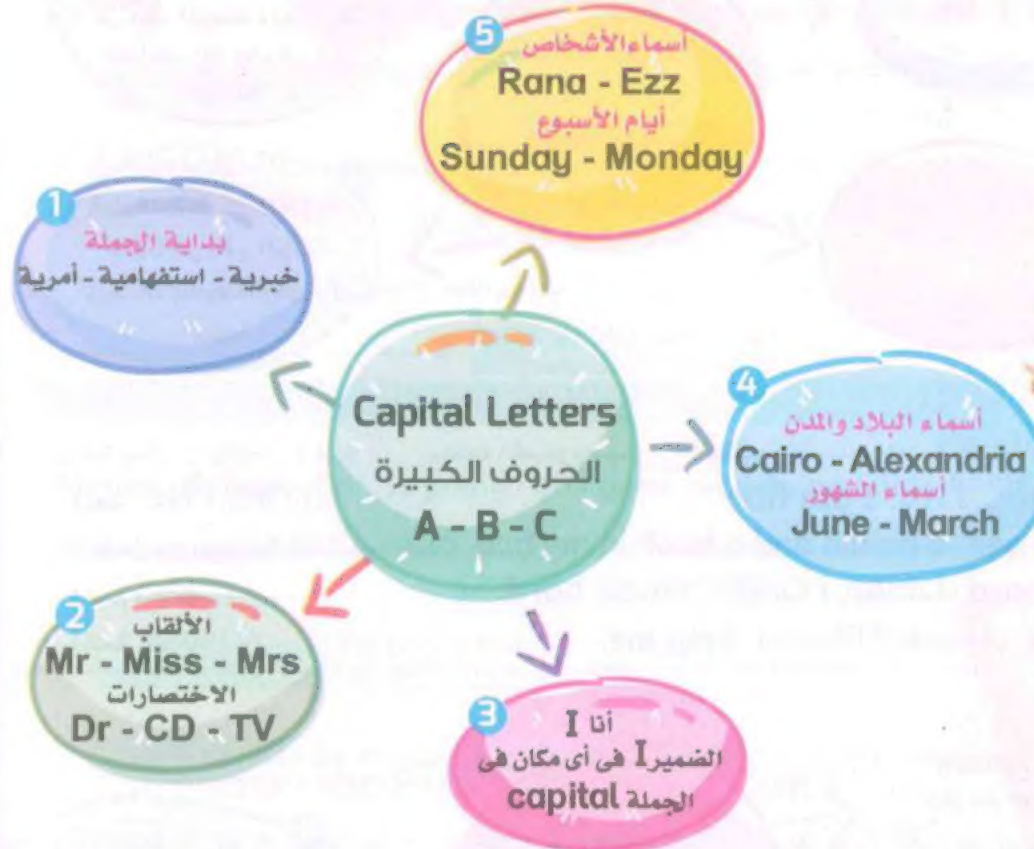
- General Activities
- Listening material



# Punctuation

علامات الترقيم

ABC



## Examples:

1. **I** like my house. (جملة خبرية)
2. **Take** the medicine. (جملة أمرية)
3. **What's** your favorite animal? (جملة استفهامية)
4. **I** have a headache. (الضمير)
5. I went to **Alexandria** last **January**. (أسماء المدن والشهور)
6. **Mr** Ali goes to the club on **Sunday**. (الألقاب وأيام الأسبوع)





### Examples:

- Yes, I am. / No, I am not. (بعد Yes, / No,)
- I have a pen, a pencil and a book in my bag. (للفصل بين مجموعة كلمات في قائمة)
- Study hard, Omar. / Omar, study hard. (اسم مخاطب)
- Help me, please. / Please, help me. (كلمة Please)



### Examples:

1. I visited the Red Sea. (جملة خبرية)
2. Write your homework. (جملة أمرية)
3. How old are you? (جملة استفهامية)
4. Hi! Nada. (علامة تعجب)



## How to write a paragraph? كيف تكتب فقرة انشائية؟

### كيفية الإجابة على سؤال (paragraph)

يطلب من التلاميذ كتابة أربعين كلمة عن موضوع من موضوعات كتاب المدرسة أو سيرة ذاتية لذلك نقدم شرح لكيفية التعامل مع هذا السؤال:

• حتى تكون الجملة بشكل صحيح يجب أن تتعلم مكونات الجملة وترتيبها في اللغة الإنجليزية حيث تتكون من:

#### أولاً ترتيب الجملة

تكملة الجملة	فعل	فاعل
ظرف زمان - مكان / صفة / حال home / yesterday happy / well	ماضي بسيط / مستمر was doing / did	مضارع بسيط / مستمر is going / go / goes
	شيء	مكان School
	اسم شخص Ahmed	

#### ثانياً صيغ الجمل المختلفة

- فاعل + verb to be + صفة → She is happy.
- فاعل + verb to be + وظيفة → Ahmed is a teacher.
- مكان + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل → He went to school.
- زمن + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل → We are open on Friday.
- مفعول + فعل + فاعل → I love him.
- الساعة + حرف جر + فعل + فاعل → I wake up at 9 o'clock.

### Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words:

أكتب فقرة انشائية من ٤٠ كلمة:

#### My new house

I live in a new big house. I like living here. It's much bigger than our old house. I lived in our old house since I was born. Then my father had to move to a new job. So we moved to a closer house.





## Tips to answer the comprehension questions

### إرشادات للإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

#### أولاً: أسئلة الاختيار من متعدد (multiple-choice)

1- قد يطلب منك تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية (main idea) في النص من خلال صيغ مثل:

- The main idea of the passage is.....
- The passage is mainly about.....

وعليك أن تختار الإجابة الصحيحة من أربعة اختيارات تُعطى لك.

#### كيف تجد الفكرة الرئيسية في النص

- هي النقطة الأساسية التي يكرر الكاتب الحديث عنها.

- تكون جملة وليست سؤالاً.

- الجمل الأخرى في النص تعطي تفاصيل ومعلومات عنها.

- غالباً تكون في أول جملة أو آخر جملة في النص.

#### لاحظ المثال الآتي

- ما باللون الأحمر هي الفكرة الرئيسية وما باللون الأزرق هي التفاصيل عنها.

Yesterday, I got a **new coat**. My **new coat** is **blue** and **red**. My **coat** is **very nice** and keeps me warm. On the back, there is a **picture of a snow man**. I will wear **my coat** to school.

2- قد يقوم واضع الامتحان بإضافة خط تحت أحد الكلمات في جملة معينة في القطعة ثم تجد سؤال اختيار من متعدد يقول: الكلمة الموضوع تحتها خط تشير إلى ....

- The underlined word '.....' refers to .....

#### ثانياً: أسئلة (open-ended) استفسامية

3- قد يطلب واضع الامتحان منك تلخيصاً (summarize) لأحد الفقرات في النص في جملة واحدة بالصيغة الآتية:

- Summarize the first / second / third paragraph (into one sentence).

#### كيف تلخص فقرة إلى جملة أو أكثر

1- حدد اسم الشخص أو الشيء أو الحيوان الأساسي بالفقرة المطلوب تلخيصها

2- حدد أهم شيء يخص ذلك الشخص أو الشيء أو الحيوان واستخدم أهم الأفعال بالفقرة للتعبير عن ذلك ويمكن

استخدام أفعال أخرى تؤدي نفس المعنى.

3- استبعد الأفكار الفرعية أو الغير أساسية أو المعلومات الأقل أهمية

4- أكتب الفكرة الأساسية في حدود خمسة كلمات أو حسب ما يطلب

## أمثلة مجابة

### 1- Summarize the first paragraph of the text in two lines.

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids, temples and other monuments. It is a wonderful visit for them. Tourists also come to see the wonderful natural world such as the desert and the Red Sea.

#### تتبع الخطوات السابقة:

1- الفقرة تتعلق بشكل أساسي بالسائحين **tourists**

2- أهم ما يخصصهم هو زيارة مصر والأماكن السياحية بها والأفعال التي تعبر عن ذلك **come / see / visit**

3- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

4- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة

#### Summary

Tourists come to Egypt to see the Pyramids and the wonderful natural world such as the Red Sea.

### 2- Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence of your own words.

My father enjoys playing football with his friends. He believes in doing sports and teaches us the same. He wants me to be clever at school. I want to make him feel proud of me one day.

1- أهم شخص **My father**

2- وأهم شيء يخصه أنه يؤمن بممارسة الرياضة ويريدني أن أتفوق في دراستي.

3- استبعد المعلومات الأقل أهمية من كل جملة.

4- قم بكتابة تلخيص الفقرة.

#### Summary

My father thinks that doing sports is very important and he wants me to be clever at school.



# Specifications for Fifth Year Primary

مواصفات الصف الخامس الابتدائي ٢٠٢٢ - ٢٠٢٣

Marks: 30

Time: One hour and a half

## A- Listening (8 Marks)

### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): (4 Marks)

An unseen listening text of about **FIFTY (50)** words followed by **FOUR (4)** separate sentences is provided. Learners are asked to write T (True) or F (False) for each sentence based on what they have heard. (One mark each)

### 2 Listen and complete: (4 Marks)

An unseen listening text of about **FIFTY (50)** words or a dialogue of **SIX (6)** exchanges followed by **FOUR (4)** separate sentences is provided. Learners are asked to listen and complete **FOUR (4)** deletions. (One mark each)

## B- Reading (11 Marks)

### 3 Read and match (A) with (B): (5 Marks)

**FIVE (5)** premises in column (A) and **SIX (6)** responses in column (B) are provided. Learners are asked to match each premise with its suitable response. The items can be jobs and descriptions, sentence halves, words and definitions.....etc. (One mark each)

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: (6 Marks)

An unseen literary or informational text from **80 to 90** words is provided. The text should be at the appropriate difficulty level for Primary **FIVE**. Learners are asked to answer:

A. **TWO (2)** MCQs with **FOUR (4)** options; each dealing with **TWO** of the following reading comprehension skills: (One mark each)

- Identify the general idea of the text.
- Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
- Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

B. **TWO (2)** open ended questions dealing with **TWO** of the following reading comprehension skills: (Two marks each)

- Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
- Make logical inferences from the text.
- Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

## C- Writing (11 Marks)

### 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (4 Marks)

**FOUR (4)** scrambled statements (sentences and questions) with **SIX (6)** words each are provided. Learners are asked to order the words to form a correct sentence or question. (One mark each)

### 6 Punctuate the following: (2 Marks)

**TWO (2)** simple statements (sentence and question) of about **SIX (6)** words with **TWO (2)** missing punctuation marks each are provided (**Capital Letter / Full Stop / Question Mark / Exclamation Mark / Comma**). Learners are asked to punctuate them correctly. (One mark each - Half a mark for each missing punctuation)

### 7 Write a paragraph or a biography of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements: (5 Marks)

Learners are asked to write a paragraph of not less than **FORTY (40)** words using **TWO (2)** given guiding elements that can be phrases, questions, fact file, tables.....etc.

(One mark for relevance of ideas – One mark for vocabulary - One mark for grammar - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation)



My  
society

## Homes in Egypt

المنازل في مصر



## Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about Egyptian homes now and in Ancient Egypt.  
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن المنازل المصرية الآن وفي مصر القديمة.
2. Talk about the home and furniture.  
- يتحدث الطالب عن المنزل والأثاث.
3. Read, understand, and listen to a short dialog about different homes.  
- يقرأ الطالب ويفهم ويستمع إلى حوار قصير حول منازل مختلفة.
4. Understand and use the simple past to talk about past events.  
- يفهم الطالب ويستخدم الماضي البسيط للحديث عن الأحداث الماضية.
5. Learn how to say double vowels.  
- يتعلم الطالب كيفية نطق الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة.
6. Write a simple blog about an unusual home.  
- يكتب الطالب مدونة بسيطة عن منزل غريب.
7. Research and make a presentation about an Ancient Egyptian home.  
- يعمل الطالب بحث ويقدم عرض تقديمي عن منزل مصري قديم (في مصر القديمة).



## The Home

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



armchair

كرسي ذو مسندين



bed

سرير



cushion

وسادة



closet

دولاب / خزانة



elevator

مصعد

## At home

في المنزل



oven

فرن



shower

دش



television

تلفزيون

## Rooms in an apartment

## الغرف في الشقة

living room

حجرة المعيشة

kitchen

مطبخ

balcony

بلكونة / شرفة

bedroom

حجرة النوم

bathroom

حمام

## Other words

## كلمات أخرى

apartment

شقة

town

مدينة صغيرة

How long?

كم المدة؟

since

منذ

parents

الوالدين

job

وظيفة

closer

أقرب

was born

وُلد

Thanks

أشكرك

modern

حديث

space

مساحة

traditional

قديم / تقليدي

gift

هدية

fantastic

رائع

view

منظر

What about?

ماذا عن؟

lovely

جميل



## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

live	يعيش
move to (يعزل)	يتنقل الى (يعزل)
cook	يطبخ
share	يشارك
prefer	يفضل

#### Past ماضٍ

lived	
moved to	
cooked	
shared	
preferred	

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

come in	يدخل
have to	يجب أن
see	يرى

#### Past ماضٍ

came in	
had to	
saw	

## Study the following

- Welcome to my new apartment! - مرحبا بكم في شقتي الجديدة!
- Do you like living here? - هل تحب العيش هنا؟
- How long did you live in your old apartment? - كم المدة التي عشتها في شقتك القديمة؟
- We moved to a closer apartment. - انتقلنا إلى شقة أقرب.
- What's better about this new apartment? - ما الشيء الأفضل في هذه الشقة الجديدة؟
- My mom says it's much easier to cook in. - تقول أمي أن الطهي أسهل بكثير (بداخل المطبخ).
- There's more space so we can have a bigger television. - هناك مساحة أكبر لذلك يمكننا امتلاك تلفاز أكبر.
- They were a gift from Grandma. - كانوا (الوسادات) هدية من الجدة.
- I share a room with my sister. - أشارك غرفة مع اختي.
- The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view! - الشرفة رائعة أيضًا - يا له من منظر رائع!
- Where do you live? - أين تسكن (تعيش)؟
- Do you live in a house or an apartment? - هل تعيش في منزل أم شقة؟

## 1 Work with a partner. Discuss:

اعمل مع زميلك وناقش الآتي:

- Where do you live? Do you live in a house or an apartment?
- Describe your house or apartment. Is it big or small? Is it modern or old?
- Say if you like your house or apartment.

## 2 Look and write:

انظر واكتب:

armchair - balcony - cushion - closet  
elevator - oven - shower - television

1



elevator

2



3



4



5



6



7



8

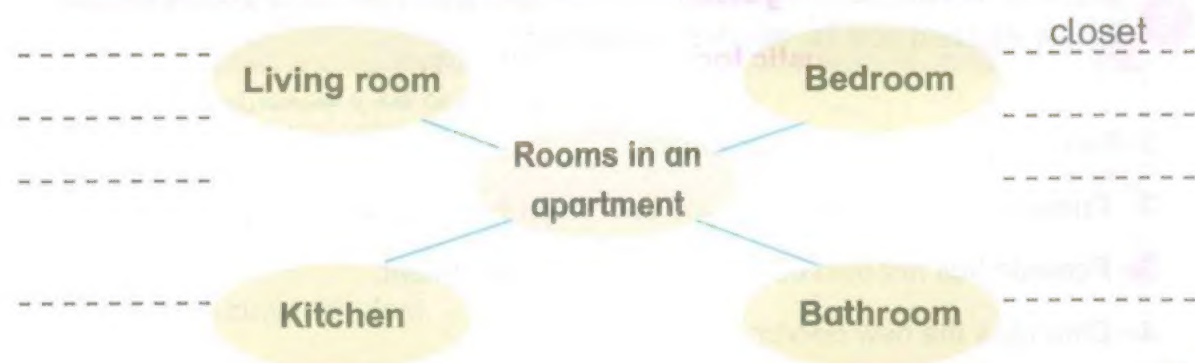


## 3 Complete the mindmap:

أكمل الخريطة الذهنية:

اكتب الأشياء الآتية عند الحجرة المناسبة لها.

armchair - bed - cushion - closet - oven - shower - television - cushion





## 4 Listen and read. Why is Fareeda happy?

استمع واقرأ. لماذا فريدة سعيدة؟

## Tapescript



نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



Fareeda: Hi Dina, welcome to my new apartment! Come in!

Dina : Thanks! Do you like living here?

Fareeda: I love it! It's a great apartment! I like this part of town and it's much bigger than our old apartment.

Dina : How long did you live in your old apartment?

Fareeda: Twelve years, since I was born. Then my parents had to move to a new job, so we moved to a closer apartment.

Dina : So, what's better about this new apartment?

Fareeda: Come and see. The new kitchen is bigger, and the oven is more modern. My mom says it's much easier to cook in.

Dina : Very nice. And this is the living room?

Fareeda: Yes, as you can see, there's more space so we can have a bigger television. Look at these traditional cushions. They were a gift from Grandma.

Dina : Oh, yes! What about the bedrooms?

Fareeda: We have three bedrooms now. I share a room with my sister, Amira, but our bedroom is really big. And we have two bathrooms.

Dina : It's lovely! The balcony is fantastic too - what a great view!



## 5 Listen again. Number the rooms in the order you hear them:

استمع مرة أخرى ورقم الغرف بالترتيب الذي تسمعه في النص:

bedrooms..... kitchen .....1..... balcony ..... bathrooms ..... living room .....

## 6 Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

حدد ما إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أو خطأ ثم صحح الجمل الخاطئ في كراسك:

- 1- Fareeda prefers her old apartment. ☐
- 2- Fareeda's family lived in the old apartment for 12 years. ☐
- 3- Fareeda has her own bedroom in the new apartment. ☐
- 4- Dina likes the new apartment. ☐



## Activities

## 1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب



1. Fatma lives in a modern .....
2. She has three ..... in the living room.
3. The ..... is big.
4. She bakes bread in the .....

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p><b>A</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Welcome to</li> <li>2 There's more space so we can</li> <li>3 Do you like</li> <li>4 How long did you</li> <li>5 We have three</li> </ol> | <p><b>B</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. bedrooms now.</li> <li>b. live in your old apartment?</li> <li>c. what a great view!</li> <li>d. my new apartment!</li> <li>e. have a bigger television.</li> <li>f. living here?</li> </ol> |
|--|--|

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملًا صحيحة:

1. do - live - Where - you?  
.....
2. were - a - from - They - Grandma - gift.  
.....
3. balcony - is - The - too - fantastic.  
.....
4. moved - apartment - to - a closer - We.  
.....

## 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1- what about the bedrooms  
.....
- 2- reda is a clever student  
.....



# My perfect room



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



### Adjectives & opposites الصفات وعكسها

friendly	ودود	unfriendly	غير ودود
comfortable	مريح	uncomfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	unlucky	غير محظوظ
safe	آمن	unsafe	غير آمن
happy	سعيد	unhappy	غير سعيد
fair	عادل	unfair	غير عادل

### Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

on the right	على اليمين	in the middle of the room	في منتصف الغرفة
on the left	على اليسار	next to	بجوار
on the wall	على الحائط / الجدار		

### In the Jungle في الغابة

howler monkey	قرد العواء (سعدان العواء)	deep	عميق / بعيد في عمق....
a local villager	أحد سكان القرية المحليين	path	طريق

### Other words كلمات أخرى

perfect	رائع / مثالي	nearby / close	قريب
poster	ملصق	jungle	غابة
dark	مظلم	heavy rain	مطر غزير
alone	وحيد	go forward	يذهب للأمام
make friends	يكون صداقات	go back toward	يذهب للخلف تجاه
scientist	عالم	suddenly	فجأة
frightening	مرعب / مخيف	indeed	بالفعل
interested in	مهتم بـ	on holiday	في إجازة
do some research	يقوم بعمل بعض الأبحاث	sculpture	تمثال
		cases	حقائب

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

die	يموت
miss	يفتقد / يفوت
smile	يتسم
try	يحاول
visit	يزور
love	يحب
look up	ينظر لأعلى
shout	يصرخ
carry	يحمل
create	ينشئ

#### Past ماضٍ

died
missed
smiled
tried
visited
loved
looked up
shouted
carried
created

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

sit	يجلس
eat	يأكل
leave	يفادر
go	يذهب
meet	يقابل
tell	يخبر
set out	يبدأ رحلة
know	يعرف
wear	يرتدي
come	يأتي

#### Past ماضٍ

sat
ate
left
went
met
told
set out
knew
wore
came



### Definitions

### تعريفات

unfriendly	ودود	not kind to someone
uncomfortable	غير مريح	something that doesn't feel nice to sit on or wear on your body
unlucky	غير محظوظ	something bad happens to you without a reason
unsafe	غير آمن	dangerous
unhappy	غير سعيد	sad
unfair	غير عادل	something that happens that isn't morally right or fair



# Study the following

- On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it.  
- على اليمين يوجد سريرى وبجانبه مكتب.
- On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.  
- على الحائط يوجد الكثير من الملصقات الخاصة بالحيوانات.
- My uncle is a scientist and loves animals.  
- عمي عالم وهو يحب الحيوانات.
- The people were very friendly and helped him with his work.  
- كان الناس ودودين للغاية وساعدوه في عمله.
- He was very interested in howler monkeys.  
- كان مهتمًا جدًا بقرود العواء.
- He knew he was very close to them.  
- كان يعلم أنه قريب جدًا منهم.
- It was very heavy rain.  
- كان هناك أمطار غزيرة جدا.
- There was water everywhere and he couldn't see the path to go forward or back.  
- كان هناك ماء في كل مكان ولم يستطع رؤية الطريق للمضي قدمًا أو للخلف.
- Suddenly, lots of water came toward him.  
- فجأة جاء الكثير من الماء نحوه.
- He was very frightened.  
- كان خائفًا جدا.
- My uncle was very happy indeed!  
- كان عمي سعيدًا جدًا حقًا!
- He's very unlucky because he misses the bus.  
- إنه غير محظوظ للغاية لأنه لم يلحق الاتوبيس.
- She's very unhappy- she never smiles or tries to make friends.  
- إنها غير سعيدة للغاية - فهي لا تبتسم أبدًا أو تحاول تكوين صداقات.
- She created a fantastic sculpture from the garbage.  
- صنعت تمثالًا رائعًا من القمامة.
- We carried our heavy cases to the car.  
- حملنا حقائبنا الثقيلة إلى السيارة.

## Grammar

1  
لنستخدم  
زمن الماضي  
البسيط

- للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وانتهى.
- للتعبير عن فعل حدث مرة واحدة في الماضي أو فعل حدث عدة مرات في الماضي أو حدث كان حقيقة لفترة من الوقت في الماضي.

- I **visited** her house when I **was** five.
- We **went** to my aunt's house at the beach every summer.

يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط من:

باقى الجملة + فعل في التصريف الثانى + فاعل (كل الضمائر).

- I **met** her in Zagazig two years ago.

تنقسم الأفعال إلى أفعال منتظمة وأفعال غير منتظمة:

أولاً: الأفعال المنتظمة. هي الأفعال التى نضيف إليها (ed) فى الماضى،

want → **wanted**      help → **helped**

إذا انتهى الفعل المنتظم بحرف (e) نضيف إليه (d) فقط فى الماضى،

die → **died**      like → **liked**

وإذا انتهى بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (y) ونضيف (ied)،

study → **studied**      carry → **carried**

ثانياً: الأفعال غير المنتظمة. وهى الأفعال التى لا يضاف إليها (ed) فى الماضى،

come → <b>came</b>	eat → <b>ate</b>	go → <b>went</b>
verb to be { am / is → <b>was</b> are → <b>were</b>		
have / has → <b>had</b>	do / does → <b>did</b>	

لنفى الفعل فى الماضى البسيط نستخدم:

مصدر الفعل + **didn't** + فاعل

فعل فى التصريف الثانى + **never** + فاعل

Negative  
النفى

- He **didn't** go to the park.
- He **never** went to the park.



وفي السؤال نستخدم:

? مصدر الفعل + inf. + فاعل + + كلمة استفهام

Question  
السؤال

- When **did** people start to **live** in Egypt?

⊙ أو ممكن ان نبدا السؤال بـ: Did وتكون الاجابة No, or Yes

- Did they **write** the homework?

- Yes, they **did**. اجابة مثبتة No, they **didn't**. اجابة في النفي

yesterday – last (week – month – year) – once – in the past  
– ago – in ancient times – in + year (in 2020)

Key words  
الكلمات  
الدالة

The prefix (un-) (البادئة)

⊙ هناك بعض المقاطع التي تسمى بادئات والتي يمكن اضافتها اول بعض الكلمات حيث تغير المعنى مثال  
البادئة (un-) والتي تعطي النفي من الكلمة

happy → **unhappy** safe → **unsafe**

⊙ لاحظ

- unhappy = **not** happy uncomfortable = **not** comfortable

- He looks **unhappy** = He **doesn't** look happy.

- The armchair is very **uncomfortable** = The armchair **isn't** comfortable.

## 1 Read about the bedroom :

اقرأ عن غرفة النوم

I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. On the right, there is my bed with a desk next to it. On the left, there is my sister's bed. In the middle of the room, there is an armchair with two cushions and a big closet. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

## 2 Listen to your partner and draw their perfect bedroom:

استمع الى زميلك وارسم غرفة نومهم المثالية

Language focus

Use these phrases when telling your partner where things are:

استخدم هذه العبارات تخبر زميلك بمكان الأشياء

On the right ..... On the left ..... In the middle of the room .....

On the wall ....

On the right, there is an armchair. ....

## 3 Match the words to their meanings:

صل الكلمات بمعانيها

1 unfriendly

2 uncomfortable

3 unlucky

4 unsafe

5 unhappy

6 unfair

a sad

b dangerous

c something that doesn't feel nice to sit  
on or wear on your body

d something that happens that isn't  
morally right or fair

e something bad happens to you  
without a reason

f not kind to someone

## 4 Complete the sentences with the words in Exercise 3 :

اكمل الجمل بكلمات من التمرين السابق

1- His cat died last week. He was very .....

2- I never sit in that green armchair - it's very .....

3- Don't go down the street in the dark alone - it's very .....

4- That's very ..... - you ate everything and didn't leave any for us!

5- He's very ..... because he missed the bus.

6- She's very ..... - she never smiles or tries to make friends.



5 Underline the past simple verbs in the text. Mark the regular verbs (R) and the irregular verbs (I):

ضع خط تحت الافعال التي في الماضي البسيط في النص. اكتب (R) عند الافعال المنتظمة و اكتب (I) عند الافعال غير المنتظمة.

استمع الى النص



My uncle is a <sup>(1)</sup> and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot in <sup>(2)</sup> for work. He loved it there because the people were very <sup>(3)</sup> and helped him with his work. Then, about three years ago, something <sup>(4)</sup> happened to him and he was <sup>(5)</sup> he lived to tell me about it!

He was very <sup>(6)</sup> <sup>(7)</sup> and wanted to do some research into their family groups. A <sup>(8)</sup> told him where there was a howler monkey family nearby and he was very happy. But the villager also said, "Tomorrow, we are going to have a lot of rain so it could be <sup>(9)</sup>."

My uncle set out to look for the howler monkey family and soon he was deep in the jungle. He could hear the monkeys and he looked up. He knew he was very <sup>(10)</sup> them. Then the rain started. It was very <sup>(11)</sup>. Soon, there was water everywhere and he couldn't see the <sup>(12)</sup> to go forward or back.

Suddenly, lots of water came toward him and carried him away down to the river. He was very frightened.

Suddenly, he saw a hand and someone was shouting. It was the villager. He took Uncle's hand and said, "Now you are safe!" My uncle was very happy <sup>(13)</sup>!

أفعال منتظمة

- ١- عالم
- ٢- أمريكا الجنوبية
- ٣- ودود
- ٤- مخيف / مرعب
- ٥- مخطوط
- ٦- مهتم
- ٧- قرد العواء
- ٨- أحد سكان القرية
- ٩- غير آمن
- ١٠- قريب
- ١١- مطر غزير
- ١٢- طريق
- ١٣- بالفعل



Howler monkeys in the jungle

6 Complete the sentences with the verbs in brackets in the past simple:

اكمل الجمل باستخدام الافعال التي بين الاقواس بصيغة الماضي البسيط.

1- When we went to Sharm El-Sheikh on holiday, we ..... (meet) some new friends.

2- She ..... (create) a fantastic sculpture from the garbage.

3- We ..... (carry) our heavy cases to the car.

4- His grandma ..... (go) to Aswan last year.

5- Yesterday, my cousin ..... (come) to visit us.



كول التلي في الجرس

7 Make the sentences negative:

1- He traveled all over Egypt. He didn't travel all over Egypt.

2- He ate Om Ali in Tanta.

3- It rained yesterday.

4- They came here by airplane.

Test Yourself

أحريتك

التمرين: اكتب الجواب الصحيح من مواصفات الامتحان ولكنه لتدريب الطالب على القواعد والكلمات:

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I ..... Mr Ahmed yesterday.

- ☐ a meet ☐ b meets ☐ c met ☐ d meeting

2. She ..... eat ice cream two days ago.

- ☐ a don't ☐ b didn't ☐ c isn't ☐ d doesn't

3. .... they travel to Aswan last week?

- ☐ a Did ☐ b Do ☐ c Does ☐ d Are

4. I was tired, so my brother ..... my bag.

- ☐ a carries ☐ b carry ☐ c carrying ☐ d carried

5. Reem didn't ..... the school bus.

- ☐ a misses ☐ b miss ☐ c missed ☐ d missing



# Activities



## 1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

1 My bedroom is on

2 Unfriendly

3 He was very interested

4 We carried our heavy

5 The bed is next

a. in howler monkeys.

b. posters of animals.

c. the right.

d. to the television.

e. cases to the car.

f. not kind to someone.

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Amr went to the zoo yesterday. He went with his family. They saw a lot of animals. They saw the howler monkeys, lions and elephants. I tried to feed the animals. Mom told me it was unsafe to do this. Some children were unfriendly to the animals so dad was angry. He told them to stop hurting the animals. My sister was frightened when she saw the lion. We had lunch at the zoo. It was a nice day.

### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "unfriendly" means \_\_\_\_\_

- ☐ a sad ☐ b dangerous ☐ c not kind ☐ d lucky

2. The text is about visiting the \_\_\_\_\_

- ☐ a school ☐ b zoo ☐ c park ☐ d desert

### B- Answer the following questions:

3. Why was dad angry?

4. What did Amr try to do?

## Lesson 2

### 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. Egypt -- traveled - He - all - over.

2. are - lots - of - posters - There - of animals.

3. grandma - year - Aswan - went - to - last - His.

4. uncle - loves - is a scientist - My - and - animals.

### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- i met Miss manar yesterday.

2- how did you go to school

### 5 Write a paragraph of forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

مغامرة أجدد الوحدة

In the jungle

saw- unsafe





## Ancient Egyptian Homes

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



mud bricks الطوب اللبن (طوب من الطين)  
roof سطح المنزل  
reed mat حصيرة من البوص  
gate بوابة

pot إناء  
oven فرن  
sleeping area منطقة النوم

Ancient Egypt مصر القديمة  
the Nile نهر النيل  
drinking الشرب  
cooking الطبخ  
washing الغسيل / الفسل  
strong قوى  
cool بارد (جولطيف)  
flat مسطح / مستو  
hot nights ليالي حاره  
furniture اثاث  
different from مختلف عن  
papyrus البردى  
insects حشرات

the same نفس الشيء  
outside خارج  
crops محاصيل  
wooden box صندوق خشبي  
floor طابق / دور في مبنى  
the countryside الريف  
chicken دجاجة  
banks of the river ضفاف النهر  
by بجوار  
special style نمط خاص  
wind رياح  
all right بخير  
near قريب من - بالقرب من

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

use يستخدم  
paint يطلى / يدهن  
cook يطبخ / يطهو  
relax يسترخى  
cover يغطي  
save يوفر / يدخر  
join يربط  
store يخزن

used  
painted  
cooked  
relaxed  
covered  
saved  
joined  
stored

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

make يجعل / يصنع  
keep يحافظ على / يربى  
have يملك  
sleep ينام  
build يبني  
grow ينمو / يزرع  
blow يهب (للرياح)  
feel يشعر  
fall يسقط

made  
kept  
had  
slept  
built  
grew  
blew  
felt  
fell

## Study the following

- 1 In Ancient Egypt, many people made their homes near the Nile.  
- في مصر القديمة بنى الكثير من الناس منازلهم بالقرب من النيل.
- 2 They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing.  
- استخدموا مياه النيل للشرب والطبخ والغسيل.
- 3 They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses.  
- كما استخدموا طين من النهر لصنع الطوب لمنازلهم.
- 4 The mud bricks made very strong walls, قوية جدًا.  
- صنع الطوب اللبن جدرانًا (حوائط) قوية جدًا.
- 5 Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool.  
- أراد المصريون القدماء الحفاظ على برودة منازلهم.
- 6 Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler.  
- قام بعض الناس أيضًا بطلاء منازلهم باللون الأبيض لجعلها أكثر برودة.
- 7 Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house.  
- كانت جميع المنازل المصرية القديمة ذات أسطح مستوية، والتي كانت أكثر جزء بارد في المنزل.



- 8 The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today.  
- كان الأثاث في المنازل المصرية القديمة مختلفًا تمامًا عن وقتنا الحالي.
- 9 There were reed mats to sit and sleep on.  
- كانت هناك حصائر من البوص للجلوس والنوم عليها.
- 10 They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors.  
- استخدموا ورق البردي لتغطية النوافذ والأبواب.
- 11 In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing crops and wooden boxes for clothes.  
- في كل منزل، كان هناك أواني وسلال كبيرة لتخزين المحاصيل وصناديق خشبية للملابس.
- 12 Not many people had beds or chairs.  
- لم يكن لدى الكثير من الناس أسرة أو كرسي.
- 13 They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.  
- كانوا يزرعون الخضار ويربون الدجاج هناك.

### 1 Work with a partner. Discuss: اعمل مع زميلك وناقش:

- 1- What do you think Ancient Egyptian homes were like? .....
- 2- Where did people build their homes in Ancient Egypt? .....
- 3- What did people use to build their homes? .....

### 2 Read the passage. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false ones in your notebook:

اقرأ النص. حدد ما إذا كانت الجملة صحيحة أو خطأ ثم صحح الجملة الخطأ في كراسك:

استمع إلى النص:



In Ancient Egypt<sup>(1)</sup>, many people made their homes near the Nile. They used its water for drinking, cooking, and washing. They also used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. The mud bricks<sup>(2)</sup> made very strong walls.

Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep<sup>(3)</sup> their homes cool<sup>(4)</sup>. The mud bricks helped do this. Some people also painted their homes white to make them cooler. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs<sup>(5)</sup>, which were the coolest part of the house. Families often cooked, ate, relaxed<sup>(6)</sup>, and slept there on hot nights.

The furniture<sup>(7)</sup> in Ancient Egyptian homes was very different from today.

- ١- مصر القديمة
- ٢- الطوب اللبن
- ٣- يحافظ على
- ٤- بارد
- ٥- اسطح مسطوية
- ٦- استرخوا
- ٧- أثاث

There were reed mats<sup>(8)</sup> to sit and sleep on. They used papyrus<sup>(9)</sup> to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside. In every home, there were large pots and baskets for storing<sup>(10)</sup> crops and wooden boxes for clothes. Not many people had beds or chairs.

In cities, people lived very close together, and so they built their houses taller, with two floors<sup>(11)</sup>. This saved space<sup>(12)</sup> so they could build more houses. City houses joined together, just like today. In the countryside, houses usually only had one floor, and they also had a garden. They grew vegetables and kept chickens there.

- ٨- حصير من البوص
- ٩- البردي
- ١٠- يحرس
- ١١- طابقان، دوران
- ١٢- مساحة

- 1- A lot of people made their homes near the Nile.
- 2- In Ancient Egypt, people used water from the Red Sea for drinking.
- 3- The mud bricks helped Ancient Egyptians to keep their homes cool.
- 4- The furniture in Ancient Egyptian homes wasn't the same as today.
- 5- The Ancient Egyptians stored their clothes in metal boxes.
- 6- The houses in cities usually had one floor only.

### 3 Read and listen to the poem:

اقرأ واستمع إلى القصيدة:

By the banks of the ancient River Nile,  
Egyptian houses had a special style:  
Dark inside with small windows,  
Reed mats on the roof where the cool wind blows,  
Outside under the stars at night,  
One family together, feeling all right.  
Mud from the Nile made their walls  
Safe and strong, and never to fall.

استمع إلى النص:





Listen and write the labels on the ancient Egyptian house:

استمع واكتب الأشياء داخل المنزل المصري القديم:

gate - oven - pot - roof - reed mat - sleeping area



# Activities

## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): (استمع و اكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ))

- 1 Ancient Egyptians used mud bricks to build their houses.
- 2 The bedroom was the coolest part in the house.
- 3 Ancient Egyptians used papyrus to cook.
- 4 They slept on reed mats.

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>A</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Many people used the Nile</li> <li>2 The mud bricks made</li> <li>3 Ancient Egyptian homes all</li> <li>4 In the countryside,</li> <li>5 Some people also painted</li> </ul> | <p><b>B</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a their homes white to make them cooler.</li> <li>b for drinking and washing.</li> <li>c the Nile.</li> <li>d very strong walls.</li> <li>e houses usually only had one floor.</li> <li>f had flat roofs.</li> </ul> |
|---|---|

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. many - people - beds - had - Not - or chairs.

2. their - homes - did - people - what - use - to build?

3. had - two - in cities - floors - The houses.



4. did - build - their - Where - homes - people?

5. painted - their - Plants - white - homes.

6. grew - chickens - and - They - kept - vegetables.

#### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- Ancient Egyptians kept their homes cool

2- what did they use papyrus for

#### 5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

مجايب آخر الوحدة

#### Homes in Ancient Egypt

mud bricks - roofs



استمع إلى المفردات:

#### (ee) / i: / words



tr

شجرة



sh p

خروف



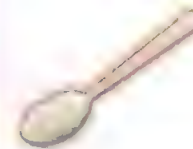
s d

بذرة



qu n ملكة

#### (oo) / u: / words



sp n

ملعقة



r f

سطح



pool حمام سباحة



sch l مدرسة



t l

اداة



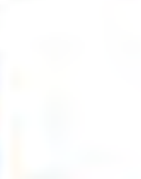
f d

طعام



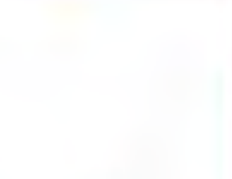
z

حديقة الحيوان



sm th

ناعم / املس



noon

فترة الظهيرة

#### (oo) / u: / words



wood

خشب



book

كتاب



c k

يطبخ / طباط



g d

جيد



wool

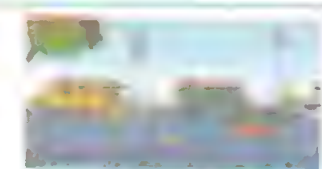
صوف

#### (oo) / u: / words



blood

دم



flood

فيضان





### Decimals

- ندرس في هذا الدرس تقريب العدد العشري.

- يجب أولاً أن نعرف ونحدد العدد العشري. انظر إلى الآتي: 13.95  
- في العدد السابق يمثل الرقم الذي يأتي بعد العلامة العشرية (.) العدد العشري، 0.95

1	3	9	5
tenths	hundredths	thousandths	ten-thousandths
points	(1/10)	(1/100)	(1/1000)
digits after the decimal point			

هذا الجزء الأرقام بعد العلامة العشرية

1 Circle the digits after the decimal point : ضع دائرة حول الأرقام التي تأتي بعد العلامة العشرية

283.7    7    8.37    3.126    0.006

والآن ندرس تقريب العدد بعد العلامة العشرية لأقرب رقم صحيح حيث يجعل ذلك العدد أصغر وأسهل للاستخدام.

إذا كان الرقم الذي يمثل جزء من عشرة (الذي يأتي بعد العلامة العشرية مباشرة) يساوي أو يزيد عن رقم (5) نقوم بتقريب الرقم لأقرب رقم أكبر من الرقم السابق.

13.95 becomes 14

لاحظ في العدد السابق رقم (9) أكبر من (5) إذا أصبح ال (9) واحد صحيح ونضيفها على (13) ليصبح الرقم (14) أما إذا كان الرقم الذي يمثل جزء من عشرة أقل من (5) إذا تقرب العدد لأصغر عدد صحيح من العدد السابق

134.3 becomes 134

لاحظ في العدد السابق رقم (3) أصغر من (5) إذا أصبح ال (3) صفراً ويقترب الرقم الصحيح الأصغر من (134.3) ليصبح الرقم (134).

Round the decimal numbers to the nearest whole number:

قرب الأعداد العشرية إلى أقرب عدد صحيح

221.22	45.67	678.92	56.88	34.2	189.37	3.56

ندرس في هذا الدرس نطق الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة (ee) / (oo) في بعض الكلمات.

- حيث ينطق حرفي (ee) مثل نطق صوت (e) الممتد / i: / long e / i: / لكن حرفي (oo) ممكن أن ينطق بثلاث طرق كما يلي:

1- مثل صوت (o) ممتد النطق long o مثل الرمز الصوتي / u: / كما في الكلمات: spoon - roof - school - pool

2- مثل الرمز الصوتي / ʊ / كما في الكلمات: wood - book - cook

3- مثل الرمز الصوتي / ʌ / كما في الكلمات: flood - blood

1 Write the double vowel words with ee or oo:

اكتب الحروف المتحركة المضاعفة ee أو oo.

1  tr\_ \_ \_

5  s\_ \_ \_

2  sp\_ \_ \_

6  s\_ \_ \_

3  sh\_ \_ \_

7  q\_ \_ \_

4  r\_ \_ \_


8  p\_ \_ \_

2 Listen and write the words you hear. Then listen again and repeat:


استمع واكتب الكلمات التي تسمعها. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وردد:


استمع إلى النص:

1  wood

3  spoon

2  book

4  flood

5  good

Read. Put the oo words in the correct column in the table. Then listen and check:

اقرأ وضع الكلمات التي تحتوي على (oo) في العمود الصحيح في الجدول ثم استمع وتأكد:

school - book - flood - smooth - cook - blood - food - zoo -  
wood - wool - noon - spoon - pool - good

/u:/	/ʊ/	/ʌ/
school	book	flood



# 5 Writing

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



unusual homes	منازل غريبة	awesome	رائع
blogging	التدوين في مدونة	boring	ممل
ecological	بيئي / صديق للبيئة	funny	مضحك
farmhouse	منزل ريفي	brilliant	رائع
landscape	منظر طبيعي	cool	جيد
awful	فظيع	friendly	ودود
annoying	مزعج	interesting	شيق

week	اسبوع	at the top	على القمة / في اعلى
topic	موضوع	light	صوء
architect	مهندس معماري	local people	اشخاص / سكان محليون
Netherlands	هولندا	farm	مزرعة
online	عبر / على الانترنت	field	حقل
upside down	مقلوب رأساً على عقب	heat	حرارة
actually	فعلياً / بالفعل	energy	طاقة
modern	حديث		

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
change	يغير	changed		write	يكتب	wrote	
work	يعمل	worked		take	يأخذ	took	
fit	يلئم / يناسب	fitted		find	يجد	found	
				get	يحصل على	got	

**blogging** التدوين في مدونة to write about something in an online blog.

**ecological** بيئي / صديق للبيئة related to living thing and their environments

## Study the following

- I like blogging about different things. أنا أحب التدوين عن أشياء مختلفة.
- This week I'm writing about unusual homes. اكتب هذا الأسبوع عن منازل غريبة.
- This topic is very interesting for me. هذا الموضوع مثير جداً للاهتمام بالنسبة لي.
- I found this unusual house in the Netherlands online. لقد وجدت هذا المنزل الغريب في هولندا على الإنترنت.
- It is actually an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. إنه في الواقع منزل ريفي قديم يغيره الناس لي جعلوه حديث.
- Local people like it because it fits in very well with the local landscape. يحبه السكان المحليون لأنه يتلاءم جيداً مع المناظر الطبيعية المحلية.
- It is also very ecological because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. كما أنه صديق للبيئة لأنه يستخدم الهواء والماء والشمس للتدفئة وتوليد الطاقة للمنزل.
- What do you think of it? ما رأيك في ذلك؟
- Do you like it? هل أحببت ذلك؟

اقرأ مدونة داليدا واجب عن سؤالها: Read Dalida's blog and answer her question :

### Dalida

Wednesday, 8<sup>th</sup> November استمع إلى النص:



Hi! My name's Dalida and I like **blogging**<sup>(1)</sup> about different things. This week I'm writing about **unusual**<sup>(2)</sup> homes. This **topic**<sup>(3)</sup> is very interesting for me because my mom's an **architect**<sup>(4)</sup>, so she sometimes takes me to see some **brilliant places**<sup>(5)</sup>. It's really awesome! I found this unusual house in the **Netherlands**<sup>(6)</sup> **online**<sup>(7)</sup> - it's **upside down**<sup>(8)</sup>! It is **actually**<sup>(9)</sup> an old farmhouse which people are changing to make it modern. This works very well because all the windows are at the top, so you get a lot of **light**<sup>(10)</sup>. Local people like it because it **fits**<sup>(11)</sup> in very well with the local **landscape**<sup>(12)</sup>, which is farms and fields. It is also very **ecological**<sup>(13)</sup> because they use air, water, and sun to heat and make energy for the house. That's so cool! 😊 What do you think of it? Do you like it?



Upside-down house in the Netherlands

### Writing Memory

- التدوين
- غريب
- موضوع
- مهندس معماري
- أماكن رائعة
- هولندا
- عبر الانترنت
- مقلوب رأساً على عقب
- فعلياً
- أضواء
- يتلاءم / يناسب
- منظر طبيعي
- صديق للبيئة



2 Decide if the sentences about Dalida's blog are True (T) or False (F)

حدد إذا كانت الجمل الآتية عن مدونة داليدا صح أو خطأ.

1. The house is in France. ☐
2. It's in a city. ☐
3. Dalida visited the house. ☐
4. It's ecologically friendly. ☐

### Tip! Writing a blog

ارشادات كتابة مدونة على الإنترنت.

- 1- Write about something you like and enjoy.
- 2- Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, it's) and words like "awesome" and "cool".
- 3- Use exclamation marks (!) and emojis: 😊 😞 😠 😡
- 4- Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.
- 5- Check that your spelling is correct.

3 Using adjectives in a blog makes it interesting. Sort the adjectives into positive and negative adjectives:

يُضفي استخدام الصفات تشويقاً للمدونة. صنف الصفات إلى ايجابية وسلبية.

awful - annoying - awesome - boring -  
funny - brilliant - cool - friendly - interesting

Positive

funny

Negative

awful

4 Write your blog. Find an unusual house or home and write about it. Write 30-40 words:

اكتب مدونتك. أوجد منزلاً أو بيتاً غريباً. واكتب عنه من ٣٠ إلى ٤٠ كلمة.

Write:

- where it is and give some information about it.
- what you think about it and why.
- ask the readers about their opinion.



## Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): (استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ))

لن الاستماع آخر الكتاب

- 1 Dalia's uncle is an architect.
- 2 Dalia's uncle lives in an old farmhouse.
- 3 Dalia played with the goats.
- 4 Dalia's uncle grows wheat and tomatoes.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- A
- 1 I like blogging about
  - 2 I'm writing
  - 3 My mom's
  - 4 Do you
  - 5 This topic is very

- B
- a. about unusual homes.
  - b. like it?
  - c. interesting for me.
  - d. upside down.
  - e. an architect.
  - f. different things.

3 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

أعد لترتيب الكلمات للتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. is - also - ecological - very - It.

2. think - do - you - What - of - it?

3. writing - about - I'm - homes - unusual.



4. found - in - the Netherlands - this unusual - house

5. like - it - you?

6. interesting - is - for me - very.

### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- it's in a city

2- where is it

### 5 Write a paragraph of forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

farmhouse - ecological

farmhouse - ecological

مجاوب آخر الوحدة



## Review

### Key vocabulary

#### At home في المنزل



armchair

كرسي ذو مسندين



bed

سرير



cushion

وسادة



closet

دولاب / خزانة



elevator

مصعد



shower

دش



television

تلفزيون



oven

فرن

mud bricks

الطوب اللبن

roof

سطح المنزل

reed mat

حصيرة من البوص

gate

بوابة

unusual homes

منازل غريبة

blogging

التدوين في مدونة

ecological

بيئي / صديق للبيئة

farmhouse

منزل ريفي

landscape

منظر طبيعي

owful

فظيع

annoying

مزعج

oven

فرن

sleeping area

منطقة النوم

awesome

رائع

boring

ممل

funny

مضحك

brilliant

رائع

cool

جميل

friendly

ودود

interesting

شيق

#### In the Jungle

howler monkey

قرد العواء

a local villager

أحد سكان القرى المحليين

deep

عميق

path

طريق



## Adjectives &amp; opposites

friendly	ودود	friendly	غير ودود
comfortable	مريح	comfortable	غير مريح
lucky	محظوظ	lucky	غير محظوظ
safe	آمن	safe	غير آمن
happy	سعيد	happy	غير سعيد
fair	عادل	fair	غير عادل

## Prepositions of place

the right	على اليمين	the middle	في منتصف الحجرة
the left	على اليسار	the room	بجوار
the wall	على الحائط / الجدار		

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

live	يعيش	lived
move to (يعزل)	ينتقل إلى (يعزل)	moved to
share	يشارك	shared
die	يموت	died
miss	يفتقد / يفوت	missed
smile	يتسّم	smiled
try	يحاول	tried
carry	يحمل	carried
create	ينشئ	created
use	يستخدم	used
cook	يطبخ / يطهو	cooked
save	يوفر / يدخر	saved
work	يعمل	worked
fit	يلئم / يناسب	fitted

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

see	يرى	saw
sit	يجلس	sat
eat	يأكل	ate
leave	يفادر	left
meet	يقابل	met
tell	يخبر	told
set out	يبدأ رحلة	set out
keep	يحافظ على / يرى	kept
sleep	ينام	slept
build	يبنى	built
grow	ينمو / يزرع	grew
blow -	يهب (للرياح)	blew
feel	يشعر	felt
fall	يسقط	fell
write	يكتب	wrote



## Pronunciation

## (ee) / i: / words



## (oo) / u: / words



## (oo) / U / words



## (oo) / A / words





## The past simple tense

نستخدم للتعبير عن حدث تم في الماضي وانتهى.

- I **visited** her house when I **was** five

يتكون الزمن الماضي البسيط من:

باقي الجملة + فعل في التصريف الثاني + فاعل (كل الضمان).

- I **met** her in Cairo three years ago.

تنقسم الافعال الى افعال منتظمة وافعال غير منتظمة:

اولا، الافعال المنتظمة: هي الافعال التي نضيف اليها (ed) في الماضي:

want → want**ed** help → help**ed**

ثانيا، الافعال غير المنتظمة: وهي الافعال التي لا يضاف اليها (ed) في الماضي:

come → <b>came</b>	eat → <b>ate</b>	go → <b>went</b>
verb to be { am / is → <b>was</b> are → <b>were</b>		
have / has → <b>had</b>	do / does → <b>did</b>	

ننفي الفعل في الماضي البسيط نستخدم:

مصدر الفعل + **didn't** + فاعل

فعل في التصريف الثاني + **never** + فاعل

- He **didn't go** to the park.

- He **never went** to the park.

وهي السؤال نستخدم:

? مصدر الفعل + **did** + فاعل + كلمة استفهام

- When **did** people start to **live** in Egypt?

أو ممكن ان تبدأ السؤال ب: **Did** وتكون الاجابة **No, or Yes**:

- **Did** they **write** the homework?

- **Yes**, they **did**. اجابة مثبتة **No**, they **didn't**. اجابة في النفي

yesterday – last (week – month – year) – once – in the past

– ago – in ancient times – in + year (in 2020)

نستخدم  
زمن الماضي  
البسيط

Negative  
النفي

Question  
السؤال

Key words  
الكلمات  
الدالة

## Writing Skills

## مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words

## Answers to Paragraphs

## Lesson 2

## In the jungle

1 I went to the jungle with my father yesterday. My father is a scientist. He did some research on howler monkeys. We saw many animals in the jungle. It's not safe to go to the jungle alone. I enjoyed my day.



## Lesson 3

## Homes in Ancient Egypt

2 Ancient Egyptians used mud bricks to build their homes. They used mud from the river to make mud bricks. The mud bricks made very strong walls. They helped to keep the homes cool, too. Ancient Egyptian homes all had flat roofs, which were the coolest part of the house.



## Lesson 4

## The upside down house

3 I love reading very much. I read about unusual houses. One of these houses is the upside down house. It is an old farmhouse. People want to make it modern. Local people like this house because it fits with the local landscape. The house is very ecological.



## Activity Unit 7

## Your home

4 I live in an apartment. There are five rooms in the apartment. There is a television in the living room. We cook food in the kitchen. The bathroom is next to the kitchen. There is a big balcony in my apartment.





A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

1. My uncle is a .....

(farmer - teacher - vet)

2. He has ..... children .

(one - four - two)

B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog with the words below: أقرأ وأكمل:

apartment - Twenty - live

A : Where do you ..... ?

B : I live in an .....

A : How long did you live in your apartment?

B : ..... years, since I was born.

C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ وأختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Hello, I'm Magdy. I'm 15 years old. My father has a farm. My brother and I play on our farm on the weekends. We have a big house on the farm. There are four rooms in our house. I love my bedroom. I share it with my brother. We are a happy family.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Magdy is ..... years old.

(five - fifteen - fifty)

2. My father has a .....

(farm - garden - field)

3. There are ..... rooms in our house.

(three - four - six)

4. We are a ..... family.

(nice - sad - happy)

5. I love my .....

(living room - bathroom - bedroom)

D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I visited his house when I ..... five.

a was

b am

c are

2. .... the left, there is my sister's bed.

a In

b At

c On

3. On the wall , there are lots of ..... of animals.

a boxes

b pens

c posters

4. His cat died last week. He was very .....

a unhappy

b happy

c nice

5. I ..... her in Cairo two years ago.

a meet

b met

c meets

E- The Reader

5 Choose the correct answer : اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Ramy and Malak are playing in the .....

a park

b yard

c farm

2. They found a ..... of a dinosaur.

a tail

b skeleton

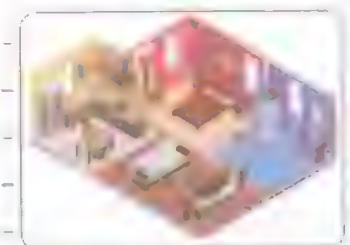
c beak

F- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن:

Your apartment





# 7 Activity



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

- 1 Ahmed lives in a small house.
- 2 Ahmed lives with his parents and his sister Fatma.
- 3 Ahmed's bedroom is white and red.
- 4 There is a desk next to Ahmed's bed.

2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

- 1- Ezz lives in an .....
- 2- There are two ..... in the living room.
- 3- Ezz has an ..... in the building.
- 4- There are ..... rooms in the apartment.

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- |                                  |                          |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 Do you like                    | a the left.              |
| 2 The scientist is interested in | b living here?           |
| 3 Ancient Egyptians wanted to    | c howler monkeys.        |
| 4 The kitchen is on              | d In the Netherlands.    |
| 5 This unusual house is          | e a city.                |
|                                  | f keep their homes cool. |

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

There are different types of homes all over the world. Many people live in apartments in big cities. These apartments are in big buildings. The buildings have many floors so people use elevators to go to their apartments. People live in houses in the countryside. The houses have gardens around them. On hot nights people sleep on roofs because it is cooler there. In the desert people sleep in tents.

Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about .....  
a people      b houses      c roofs      d floors
2. The underlined word "them" refers to .....  
a gardens      b cities      c houses      d deserts

Answer the following questions:

3. Why do people use elevators?
4. What do people do on hot nights?

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات للتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. you - live - an apartment - in a house - or - or?

2. a room - my - sister - I - with - share.

3. heavy - was - very - rain - it.

4. homes - did - people - what - use to - build?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- What do you know about Ancient Egyptian homes

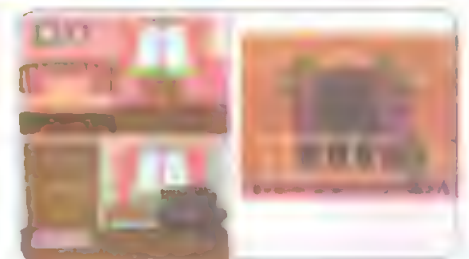
2- hamza has a sister called Hala

7 Write a paragraph of forty (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

Your home

rooms - balcony

مجاها اخر الوحدة





## My society

## Unit

## 8

## At the doctor's

في عيادة الطبيب

## Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

- 1 Listen, read, research, and write about different illnesses and treatments.  
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويقوم بعمل بحث ويكتب عن الأمراض والعلاج.
- 2 Read a story about an elephant.  
- يقرأ الطالب قصة من فيل.
- 3 Practice using "have" to talk about illnesses.  
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام الفعل "have" للتحدث عن الأمراض.
- 4 Listen to and understand a conversation between a doctor and a patient.  
- يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة بين طبيب ومريض.
- 5 Learn about and use the prefixes "un, ir, il, and im".  
- يتعلم الطالب استخدام بادئات الكلام لاعطاء عكس المعنى.
- 6 Understand the difference between /f/ and /v/ sounds.  
- يفهم الطالب الفرق بين الصوتين /f/ و /v/.
- 7 Write a short paragraph about staying healthy.  
- يكتب الطالب فقرة إنشائية عن كيف تكون بصحة جيدة.
- 8 Plan what to put in a first-aid kit and make a poster.  
- يضع الطالب خطة ما الذي يجب وضعه في صندوق الاسعافات الأولية ويعمل ملصق.

## LESSON

## 1

## THEY DIDN'T COME TO THE CLUB!



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

backache  
ألم بالظهرcold  
بردsore throat  
التهاب بالحلقheadache  
صداعearache  
ألم بالأذنillnesses  
الأمراضtoothache  
ألم بالأسنانcough  
كحة / سعال

## Other words



problem	مشكلة
ankle	كاحل - رصغ القدم
tooth	سنة
stomach	معدة
shoulder	كتف
swimming	السباحة
dentist	طبيب أسنان

coach	مدرب
feel better	يشعر بتحسن
milk	لبن
honey	عسل
practice	تدريب - تمرين
club	نادي
really	حقًا / جدًا



## Adjectives

good	جيد
OK	بصحة جيدة
bad	سوء

careful	حريص
worried	قلق

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Present

## Past

hope	يأمل	hoped
talk	يتكلم	talked

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present

## Past

have / has	يملك - يصاب بـ	had
hurt	يؤلم	hurt
say	يقول	said

## Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

- What's the matter? مما تشكو؟

My + عضو الجسم + hurts. وللدرد نستخدم:

- My tooth hurts.

- Can I + مصدر الفعل + .....? هل من الممكن أن.....؟

- Can I have some milk and honey?

للسؤال شخص  
مما تشكو؟لطلب شيء  
بطريقة مهذبة

## Study the following

- Did you have a good day at the club? هل قضيت يوماً ممتعاً في النادي؟
- Only five people came to the club today. أتت خمسة أشخاص فقط إلى النادي اليوم.
- Are you OK? هل أنت بخير؟
- My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. أصيب صديقي طارق بال ألم في كاحله في تدريب كرة القدم الليلة الماضية.
- Two of my friends have a cold. أصيب اثنين من زملائي بالبرد.
- The coach told us to be careful. أخبرنا المدرب بأن نكون حذرين.
- How do you feel? كيف تشعر؟
- I hope they'll feel better tomorrow. أنتمى أن يشعروا بتحسن غداً.

- I'm worried about my friends. أنا قلق على زملائي.
- What's the matter? - مما تشكو؟
- Can I have some milk and honey? هل ممكن أن أتناول بعض من اللبن والعسل؟
- It really hurts. - انها تؤلمني حقاً.
- Amr has an earache from swimming. - عمرو مصاب بال ألم في الأذن من السباحة.

1 Listen and read: How does Fares feel today? استمع واقرأ: كيف يشعر فارس اليوم؟

## Tapescript

## نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:

Mom: Hi Fares! Did you have a good day at the club?

Fares: Not really. Only five people came to the club today!

Mom: Oh no! Are they OK?

Fares: No, they have problems. My friend Tarek hurt his ankle at football practice last night. And Amr has an earache from swimming.

Mom: What about your cousin Lama? Your aunt said she had a toothache.

Fares: No, she wasn't there. I think she went to the dentist. Two of my friends have a cold. The coach told us to be careful. When we have a cough or a sore throat, we should stay home!

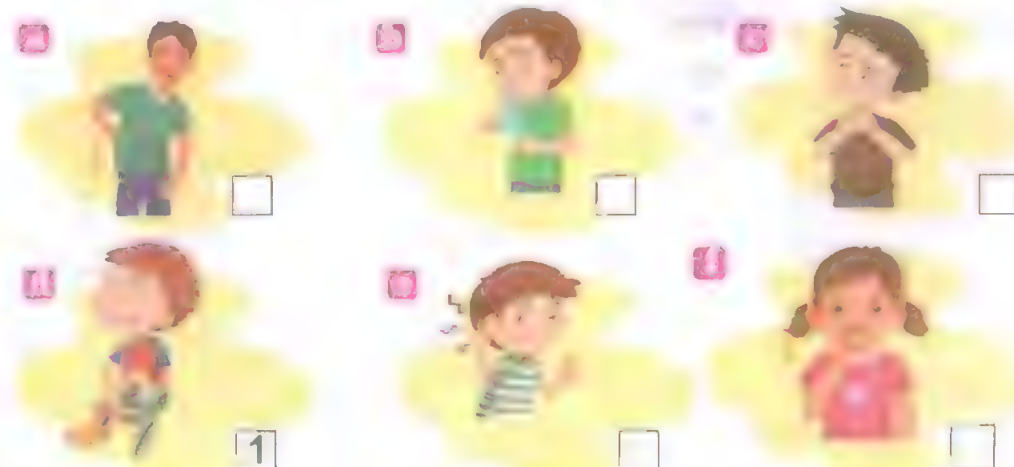
Mom: How do you feel?

Fares: Well, I have a backache and I'm worried about my friends. I hope they'll feel better tomorrow.

Mom: I hope so, too!

2 Listen again and number the photos in the order that Mom and Fares talk about them:

استمع مرة أخرى ورقم الصور حسب الحوار السابق بين فارس ووالدته:





1 Listen again. Circle the correct words. استمع مرة أخرى. اختر الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. Fares had a **bad** / good day at the club.
2. Tarek hurt his **ankle** / ear at football practice.
3. Fares thinks Lama went to the **doctor** / dentist.
4. Two of Fares's friends have a **cold** / an earache.
5. Fares's **leg** / back hurts.

4 Read the words in the box. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences, then listen and check:

اقرأ الكلمات في المربع. أنظر إلى الصور وأكمل الجمل، ثم استمع وتأكد.

cough - headache - shoulder - toothache



Mom: What's the matter, Dina?  
Do you have a **toothache** ?

Dina: Yes. My tooth hurts!



Mom , can I have some milk and  
honey for my ..... please?



Ouch! My ..... hurts!



Mom: What's the matter, Wael?  
Does your stomach hurt?

Wael: No, I have a .....

# Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع وكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

	True	False
1 Amr went to the club yesterday.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 Amr had a toothache.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 Amr went to the doctor's.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 Amr should stay home.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Did you have	a feel?
2 What's	b swimming.
3 How do you	c a good day at the club?
4 I have a	d hurts.
5 He has an earache from	e the matter?
	f backache.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملًا صحيحة:

1. matter - is - What - the?  
.....
2. I - have - some - milk - some?  
.....
3. have - Do - you - sore - a - throat?  
.....



4. told - The coach - to - us - careful - be.

5. am - friends - I - about - worried - my.

6. should - stay - Win - home.

### 4 Punctuate the following:

1. how do you feel

2. my tooth hurts

### 5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

#### A toothache

tooth - hurts



## CLIL Science part 1



### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



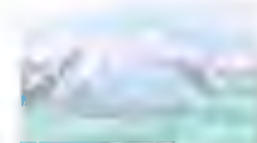
fresh water

ماء عذب



salt water

مياه مالحة / ماء البحر



glacier

جبل جليدي



lake

بحيرة



river

نهر

### Water

المياه



بحر

محيط



stream

مجرى / جدول مائي

### Other words



important

health

stomachache

crops

sea water

glass

bathwater

هام

صحة

ألم بالمعدة

محاصيل

مياه البحر

كوب

المياه المستخدمة للاستحمام

rain

the Red Sea

the Mediterranean Sea

drinking water

a day

مطر

البحر الأحمر

البحر الأبيض المتوسط

مياه الشرب

في اليوم

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

use

يستخدم

used

talk

يتكلم

talked

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

drink

يشرب

drank

can

يستطيع

could



1 Work with a partner. Discuss:

اعمل مع زميلك. ناقش:

1. How many glasses of water do you drink every day?

I drink 8 glasses of fresh water a day.

2. Why is water important for your health?

Tip!

- Salt water can also be called sea water. It is the water in seas and oceans.

المياه المالحة تسمى أيضا بمياه البحر. وهي المياه الموجودة في البحار والمحيطات.

2 Look and complete:

انظر واكمل:

glacier - lake - ocean - river - stream

1



glacier

2



3



4



5

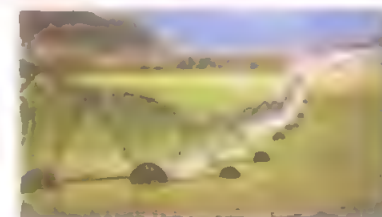


Look at the photos. Do you think the water is fresh water or salt water? Discuss with a partner:

انظر إلى الصور. في رأيك هل تحتوي الصور على مياه عذبة أم مالحة؟ ناقش مع زميلك.



1. bathwater



2. water for crops



3. drinking water

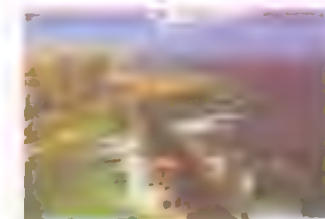


4. the Red Sea

Think. What's the difference between the water in the River Nile and the Mediterranean Sea? Why can't we drink the water in the sea? Use these clues to talk about your answers:

فكر. ما الفرق بين المياه الموجودة في النيل وبين المياه الموجودة في البحر الأبيض المتوسط؟ لماذا لا نستطيع شرب المياه من البحر؟ استخدم الكلمات المساعدة للتحدث عن إجابتك.

fresh water - salt water - health - salt - stream - rain - stomachache



The River Nile has fresh water but the



## Lesson

## 2

## Describing the elephant Part 2

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



blind	كفيف	spear	رُمح
trunk	خرطوم الفيل (زلومة)	rope	حبل
tusk	ناب الفيل	flexible	مرن / لين

## Other words

leaf	ورقة شجر	in fact	في الحقيقة
each	كل	both	كلاهما
idea	فكرة	along	بطول / بمحاذاة
tail	ذيل	side	جانب
part	جزء	snake	ثعبان
stick	عصا	tree trunk	جذع شجرة
moment	لحظة	finally	أخيراً

## Adjectives

incredible	مدهش	wrong	خطأ
excited	متحمس	round	دائري / مستدير
enormous / huge	ضخم	hard	صلب
strong	قوي	long	طويل
pointed	مدبب	smooth	ناعم الملمس
clever	ماهر / ذكي	flat	مسطح / مستو
correct	صحيح		

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

discover	يكشف
shape	يشكل / يأخذ شكل
look like	يشبه
touch	يلمس
reach	يصل إلى
listen	يستمع
stop	يوقف / يعرف
walk over	يمشي بجوار

discovered
shaped
looked like
touched
reached
listened
stopped
walked over

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

meet	يقابل
put	يضع
am / is	يكون
are	يكونوا
find out	يكشف

met
put
was
were
found out

## Language Functions

## وظائف لغوية

نستخدم الأعداد الترتيبية للتحدث عن ترتيب شيء:

- first, second, third, fourth, fifth, sixth .....

الأول, الثاني, الثالث, الرابع, الخامس, السادس

Ordinal numbers  
الأعداد الترتيبية

blind كفيف can't see

trunk خرطوم الفيل (زلومة) the very long nose of an elephant

tusk ناب الفيل a very long pointed tooth

spear رُمح a long pointed stick

## Study the following

- 1 A long time ago, there were six blind men.  
- منذ وقت طويل، كان هناك ستة أشخاص مكفوفين.
- 2 Each man had a different idea.  
- كان لكل رجل فكرة مختلفة.
- 3 The men were excited.  
- كان الرجال متحمسين.
- 4 The first man touched the side of the elephant.  
- لمس الرجل الأول جانب الفيل.
- 5 It's very tall and very strong. It's like a wall.  
- إنه قوى وطويل جداً، إنه يشبه الحائط.



6 You're wrong! It's round and strong.

- أنت مخطيء! إنه مستدير وقوي.

7 The elephant is long and flexible.

- الفيل طويل ولين.

8 He reached out and touched the elephant's ear.

- وصل الرجل إلى أذن الفيل ولمسها.

9 This elephant is smooth and flat.

- هذا الفيل ملمسه ناعم ومسطح.

10 You're all correct.

- أنتم جميعاً على صواب.

11 The elephant is the biggest animal in the world.

- الفيل هو أكبر حيوان في العالم.

12 When we listen to other people, we can understand the world better.

- عندما نستمع للآخرين، نستطيع فهم العالم بطريقة أفضل.

### 1 Read and listen to the story. What is special about the men?

اقرأ واستمع إلى القصة. ما المميز في الرجال؟

استمع إلى النص



A long time ago, there were six blind men who wanted to meet an elephant. They had heard many stories about these incredible<sup>(1)</sup> animals, but each man<sup>(2)</sup> had a different idea about what the elephant would look like.

One day, a local farmer<sup>(3)</sup> was walking along<sup>(4)</sup> the road with an elephant that worked on his farm. The farmer asked if the men would like to touch the elephant to discover<sup>(5)</sup> how it looks. The men were very excited and walked over<sup>(6)</sup> to the enormous animal. The first man touched the side of the elephant. He said, "It's very tall and very strong. It's like a wall!"

The second man put his arms around the elephant's back leg. He said, "No, you're wrong<sup>(7)</sup>! It's round and strong, like a tree trunk<sup>(8)</sup>!"

When the third man put his hand on the elephant's trunk, he said, "You're both<sup>(9)</sup> wrong! The elephant is long and flexible<sup>(10)</sup> ... it's just like a snake!"

The fourth man put his fingers against the elephant's tusk<sup>(11)</sup>. He said, "It's hard, long, and smooth. I think it's dangerous like a spear<sup>(12)</sup>!"

The fifth man was very, very tall. He reached out and touched the elephant's ear. He said, "This elephant is smooth and flat, and shaped<sup>(13)</sup> just like a leaf!"

Finally, the sixth man put his hand on the elephant's tail. He said, "This elephant is not like a wall, a spear, or a snake. It's not like a leaf or tree trunk! This elephant is just like a rope<sup>(14)</sup>!"

The farmer listened to everything the men said. He turned to them and said, "In fact, you're all correct! Each of you only touched one part of the elephant. If you stop for a moment, and listen to what you all think, you can all see what the elephant looks like."

#### Arabic Meaning

- ١- مذهش
- ٢- كل رجل
- ٣- فلاح من السكان
- ٤- المحليين
- ٥- بمحاذاة
- ٦- مني بحوار
- ٧- خطأ
- ٨- جذع شجرة
- ٩- كلاهما
- ١٠- مرين
- ١١- ناب
- ١٢- رمح
- ١٣- بأحد شكل
- ١٤- حبل

### 2 Match the words to their correct meaning.

صل الكلمة بمعناها الصحيح.

- A**
- 1 blind
  - 2 trunk
  - 3 tusk
  - 4 spear

- B**
- a. a very long pointed tooth
  - b. a long pointed stick
  - c. the very long nose of an elephant
  - d. can't see



### 3 Answer the questions in your notebook.

أجب عن الأسئلة في كراسك.

1. What did the blind men want to find out?
2. What did the first blind man say about the elephant?
3. Which part of the elephant was like a tree trunk? Why?
4. Why did the fourth blind man think the elephant's tusk was like a spear?
5. Which part of the elephant was like a huge leaf?
6. What did the sixth blind man think the elephant's tail was like?
7. What did the farmer tell blind men to do? Why?

### 4 What do you think the moral of the story is?

ما رأيك ما هو الدرس الأخلاقي (المغزى) من هذه القصة؟

1. The elephant is the biggest animal in the world.
2. Blind men are very clever, and they are good at describing things.
3. When we listen to other people, we can understand the world better.



# Activities



## 1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

1. Hani went to the ..... yesterday.
2. Hani saw a lot of .....
3. Hani took many .....
4. The animal that Hani liked was the .....

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

1 A blind man

2 The spear is

3 I drink eight

4 Why is water

5 Which part of

a long pointed stick.

b. important for health?

c. the elephant was like a huge leaf?

d. biggest animal.

e. can't see.

f. glasses of fresh water a day.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Osama. I like trips. Last week, I went on a trip to the zoo with my friends at school. I liked animals in the zoo. One of these animals was the elephant. It was very big. The elephant's ear was like a huge leaf. It was very tall.

The elephant's leg was like a tree trunk. I gave the elephant a carrot. My friends said that the elephant was the biggest animal in the zoo. It was very fun.

### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "It" refers to the .....  
 a zoo                      b elephant                      c trip                      d ear
2. The passage is mainly about the .....  
 a cat                      b lion                      c elephant                      d donkey

## Lesson 2

### B- Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

4. What did Osama give the elephant?

### 4 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

1. drink - eight - I - glasses - fresh water - of.

2. both - You - wrong - are.

3. elephant - long - The - flexible - is - and.

4. man - had - Each - idea - a - different.

5. all - You - correct - are.

### 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم:

1- what did the blind man want to find out

2- the farmer listened to everything



## ★ How are you?



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



unwell مريض - ليس بحالة جيدة  
relative (s) قريب (أقارب)  
staff هيئة الموظفين (طاقم العاملين)  
helpful مفيد

family members أفراد الأسرة  
crowded مزدحم  
injections حقن  
corridor طريقة - ممر

## Other words



## كلمات أخرى

sick person = patient شخص مريض  
alone بمفرده  
Instead of بدلاً من  
Don't worry لا تقلق  
cut جرح  
text نص  
class فصل - حصة

care for يعني بـ  
bridge جسر - كوبري  
throat حلق  
playground ملعب  
bandage ضمادة  
feel well يشعر أنه بخير  
southern جنوبي

## Adjectives &amp; opposites

## الصفات وعكسها

responsible	مسئول	Irresponsible	غير مسئول
legal	شرعي - قانوني	illegal	غير قانوني
moral	أخلاقي	immoral	غير أخلاقي
polite	مؤدب	impolite	غير مؤدب
possible	ممکن	impossible	غير ممكن
fit	لائق بدنيا	unfit	غير لائق بدنيا
usual	معتاد	unusual	غير معتاد
regular	منتظم	irregular	غير منتظم

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Present مصارع

## Past ماض

stay يقيم - يبقى  
clean ينظف  
turn يحول - يلف  
care يعتني بـ  
work يعمل  
treat يعالج

stayed  
cleaned  
turned  
cared  
worked  
treated

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present مصارع

## Past ماض

fall يقع / يسقط  
come in يدخل  
teach يُدرّس / يعلم  
give يعطي  
become يصبح  
learn يتعلم

fell  
came in  
taught  
gave  
became  
learned / learnt

## Grammar

## قواعد لغوية

## Verb to have

- يستخدم الفعل **have / has** للتحدث عن الأمراض بمعنى مصاب بـ كالآتي:

**I - you - we - they** اسم جمع → **have**  
**He - she - it** اسم مفرد → **has** } اسم المرض +

1  
**have / has**  
مصائب

- I **have** a headache.
- He **has** a sore throat.

⊙ وللفي نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

**I - you - we - they** اسم جمع → **don't have**  
**He - she - it** اسم مفرد → **doesn't have** } اسم المرض +

- I **don't** have a headache.
- He **doesn't** have a toothache.

⊙ وللأسئلة نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

**Do + I - you - we - they** اسم جمع + **have**  
**Does + he - she - it** اسم مفرد + **have** } اسم المرض + ؟

- Do you **have** a cold? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.
- Does he **have** a cold? Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.



## The prefixes (un-ir-il-im) بادئات

1  
prefixes  
البادئات

- هناك بعض المقاطع التي تسمى بادئات والتي يمكن اضافتها اول بعض الكلمات حيث تغير المعنى مثال البادئات (un, ir, il, im) والتي تعطى النفي من الكلمة،  
● وتستخدم هذه البادئات قبل الصفات لاعطاء عكس المعنى للصفة مثل،

usual → unusual well → unwell

- تستخدم البادئة "ir" اذا بدأت الصفة بحرف "r"،  
- "ir" → responsible → irresponsible  
● تستخدم البادئة "il" عندما تبدأ الصفة بحرف "l"،  
- "il" → legal → illegal  
● تستخدم البادئة "im" اذا بدأت الصفة بحرفي "m, p"،  
- "im" → possible → impossible  
moral → immoral

## Study the following

- 1 Do you have a headache? - هل انت مصاب بصداع؟
- 2 Does Nader have a headache? - هل نادر مصاب بصداع؟
- 3 I have a cut on my arm. - لدى جرح في ذراعي.
- 4 Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it. - لا تقلق. سوف انظف الجرح واضع عليه ضمادة.
- 5 The hospital treats patients from all over the country. - تعالج المستشفى المرضى من كل انحاء البلاد.
- 6 It is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital alone. - من غير المألوف ان يذهب الشخص المريض للمستشفى بمفرده.
- 7 Family usually go with their unwell relative. - تذهب الأسرة عادة مع الشخص المريض من اقاربهم.
- 8 Some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give injections. - يتعلم بعض الناس كيفية تغيير الضمادات والبعض الآخر يتعلم كيفية إعطاء الحقن.

- 9 The nurses become teachers and the family members become students.  
- تصبح الممرضات معلمات ويصبح أفراد الأسرة متعلمين.
- 10 They have classes to teach the families.  
- لديهم حصص (دروس) لتعليم العائلات (الأسر).
- 11 It also helps the families to care for their relatives.  
- تساعد أيضًا الأسر في الاهتمام بأقاربهم.
- 12 The staff at this hospital do something special.  
- تفعل هيئة الموظفين في هذه المستشفى شيئًا مميزًا.

## 1 Listen and read. What's the matter with Ashraf?

استمع وأقرأ. مما يشكو أشرف؟



Tapescript

نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص

- Ashraf : Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.  
Doctor : What's the matter, Ashraf? Do you have a headache?  
Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a headache.  
Doctor : Do you have a stomachache?  
Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a stomachache.  
Doctor : Do you have a toothache?  
Ashraf : No, Doctor. I don't have a toothache. I have ... I have ... Achoo!  
Doctor : Oh, dear! You have a cold. Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.

## 2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences:

انظر إلى الصور. أكمل الجمل:



- 1 Amir has ..... a stomachache.
- 2 ..... a toothache.
- 3 ..... a cold.
- 4 ..... an earache.
- 5 ..... a headache.



## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences or questions:

ضع الكلمات في ترتيبها الصحيح لتكون جمل أو أسئلة ؟

1. you / an earache / Do / have / ?

2. sore / a / I / throat / have / .

3. a / has / He / cold / .

4. Nader / have / Does / headache / a / ?

5. he / No, / doesn't / .

## 4 Read. What part of her body has Nahla hurt?

Nurse : Come in. Nahla. What's the matter? اقرأ. أي جزء من أجزاء الجسم يؤلم نهلة ؟

Nahla : I fell over in the playground.

Nurse : Oh, dear. Where does it hurt?

Nahla : Here. I have a cut on my arm.

Nurse : Oh, yes, I see. Don't worry. I'll clean it and put a bandage on it.

Nahla : Thank you, nurse.

## 5 Listen and read. Which country is this hospital in?

استمع واقرأ. أي دولة بها المستشفى ؟

استمع إلى النص

## A special Hospital

In a hospital in **Bangalore**<sup>(1)</sup>, a city in southern India, there are many patients. The hospital **treats**<sup>(2)</sup> patients from all over the country. With every patient, there are about ten family **members**<sup>(3)</sup>. In India, it is unusual for a sick person to go to the hospital **alone**<sup>(4)</sup>. Family usually go with their unwell **relative**<sup>(5)</sup>. This means that the hospital is often very crowded and busy. But **instead of**<sup>(6)</sup> telling family members that they can't visit their sick relatives, the staff at this hospital do something **special**<sup>(7)</sup>. They turn a problem into something wonderful. They have classes to teach the family to look after the sick person. For example, some people learn how to change bandages and others learn how to give **injections**<sup>(8)</sup>.



## Amma Words

- ١- مدينة بانجالور (جنوب الهند)
- ٢- يعالج
- ٣- أعضاء
- ٤- بمفرده
- ٥- قريب
- ٦- بدلا من
- ٧- مميز
- ٨- حقن

Each afternoon, **staff**<sup>(9)</sup> from the hospital turn the corridors into classrooms. The nurses become teachers and the family members - and sometimes even the patients - become the students. Not **only does**<sup>(10)</sup> this help the hospital staff, but it also helps the families to **care** for their relatives when they go home. The staff know that the lessons work because not as many patients **return**<sup>(11)</sup> to the hospital now.

## 6 Complete the summary of the text with the words in the box:

أكمل ملخص النص بالكلمات من بين الأقواس :

helpful - hospital - injection - staff - patients - relatives

The text is about a ① ..... in India. It is a very busy place that treats ② ..... from all over the country. People usually travel to the hospital with many ③ ..... so this means the hospital is always very crowded. At the hospital, the ④ ..... teach the family members how to do useful things, like changing a bandage or giving an ⑤ .....

This is ⑥ ..... for both the staff and the patients.

## 7 Rewrite these sentences so they mean the opposite. Use the prefix un-:

أعد كتابة الجمل ليعطاء عكس المعنى. استخدم البادئة "un" :

1. Tarek is happy.

2. The bridge is safe.

3. Dad is fit.

## 8 Look at the chart. Add the prefix ir-, il-, or im- to these words:

ضع البادئات الآتية (ir, il, im) للكلمات ليعطاء عكس المعنى :

1. legal

2. polite

3. moral

4. regular



# Activities

## 1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

1. Hazem was ..... yesterday.
2. Hazem's ..... hurts.
3. The doctor told Hazem to stay .....
4. Hazem took ..... and felt well .

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

1 Amir has

2 Do you

3 Don't

4 The opposite of "moral"

5 There are a lot of

A

a. have an earache?

b. people in the hospital.

c. is immoral.

d. a cold.

e. worry, I'll clean it.

f. matter?

B

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. fell - in - over - I - playground - the.

2. it - does - Where - hurt?

3. unwell - go with - usually - Family - their - relative.

4. I - my arm - have - a cut - on.

## 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. amir has a toothache

2. what's the matter

## Lesson

# 4

## The power of honey

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



bandage  
ضمادة



sunscreen  
كريم واقى من الشمس



pills  
أقراص دواء



honey and lemon  
عسل وليمون



wound  
جرح



cut knee  
جرح بالركبة

treatment

علاج

heal

يلتئم / يشفى

bacteria

بكتريا

sunburn

حرق شمس

### Other words

### كلمات أخرى

basbousa

بسبوسة

injures

إصابات

substance

مادة

recently

حديثاً / مؤخراً

illnesses

أمراض

countries

دول - بلاد

thousand = 1000

الف

however

بالرغم من / مع ذلك

medical care

رعاية طبية

jar

برطمان

perhaps

ربما

types

أنواع



## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Present مضارع

enjoy	يستمتع بـ
kill	يقتل
treat	يعالج
heal	يلتئم / يُشفى
damage	يتلف

## Past ماضٍ

enjoyed
killed
treated
healed
damaged

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present مضارع

cut	يجرح
know	يعرف
make	يصنع
get better	يتحسن

## Past ماضٍ

cut
knew
made
got better

## Study the following

- I cut my knee last week. جرحت ركبتي الأسبوع الماضي.
- My grandpa put a bandage on it. وضع جدي ضمادة على الجرح.
- Did you know that honey isn't only a food? هل تعلم أن العسل ليس بطعام فقط؟
- Doctors have used honey for thousands of years. استخدم الأطباء العسل لآلاف السنين.
- It is also used as a treatment for some injuries and illnesses. يستخدم أيضًا كعلاج لبعض الجروح والأمراض.
- It was first used to treat wounds by Egyptian doctors. تم استخدام (العسل) كعلاج للجروح بواسطة الأطباء المصريين.
- Some types of honey contain things that can help to kill bacteria. تحتوى بعض أنواع العسل على أشياء تساعد في قتل البكتيريا.
- You must be careful. يجب عليك أن تكون حذرًا.
- Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth. العسل هو أكثر مادة مذاقها حلو على وجه الأرض.

## Definitions

التعريفات

treatment	علاج	medical care to help you get better
wound	جرح	an injury that damage your skin
bacteria	بكتيريا	very small things that can make you ill
heal	يلتئم - يشفى	to get better

## 1 Look at these items. Match them to the problems.

انظر إلى الأشياء وصلها بالمشكلات المناسبة لها.



a. bandage



b. sunscreen



c. honey and lemon



d. pills

1- a sore throat

2- a cut knee

3- sunburn

4- a headache

## 2 When was the last time you needed an item from Exercise 1? What happened? Tell your partner.

متى آخر مرة أحتاجتها فيها لأشياء من التمرين رقم ١؟ ماذا حدث؟ أخبر زميلك.



I cut my knee last week. My grandma put a bandage on it.

I had sunburn so I .....

.....

.....



- 3 Read the first paragraph of an article about honey.  
What two ways does the writer say we use honey in food?

اقرأ الفقرة الأولى عن العسل. ما هما الطريقتان التي نستخدم بهما العسل في الطعام؟

استمع إلى النص.

Do you like honey? **Maybe**<sup>(1)</sup> you enjoy eating it for breakfast. Or maybe you enjoy it in a sweet basbousa? But did you know that honey isn't only a food? It is also used as a **treatment**<sup>(2)</sup> for some **injuries**<sup>(3)</sup> and illnesses.

In some countries, honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years. It was first used to treat **wounds**<sup>(4)</sup> by Egyptian doctors around 5,000 years ago. **Recently**<sup>(5)</sup>, scientists have tried to find out **exactly**<sup>(6)</sup> why honey is so good for **healing**<sup>(7)</sup> wounds and treating illnesses.

Scientists know that some types of honey **contain**<sup>(8)</sup> things that can help to kill **bacteria**<sup>(9)</sup>. This helps wounds to heal more quickly. You must be careful, however. The honey that doctors use is a special honey only that is safe to use as a treatment. So, if you have a jar of honey in your **cupboard**<sup>(10)</sup>, you can mix it with milk to make your cough better, but don't put it on your cut knee!



ألفاظ جديدة

- ١- ربما
- ٢- علاج
- ٣- إصابات
- ٤- جروح
- ٥- حديثاً- مؤخرًا
- ٦- بالضبط
- ٧- التئام
- ٨- يحتوي على
- ٩- بكتيريا
- ١٠- خزانة

- 4 Now read the full article. Check (✓) the facts that are mentioned:

الآن اقرأ الحوار كاملاً. ضع علامة (✓) أمام الحقائق المذكورة.

1. Bees make honey.
2. Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth.
3. Doctors have used honey for thousands of years.
4. Some types of honey can kill bacteria.

- 5 Look at the words in bold in the article. Match them to their meaning

انظر إلى الكلمات بخط سميك في المقال. صل الكلمة بمعناها.

- A**
- 1 treatment
  - 2 wound
  - 3 bacteria
  - 4 heal

- B**
- a. to get better
  - b. very small things that can make you ill
  - c. medical care to help you get better
  - d. an injury that damages your skin



## Pronunciation

استمع إلى النص.



- ندرس في هذا الدرس الفرق بين صوتي حرفي الـ (f) ، (v).
- ينطق حرف (f) باستخدام الأسنان العليا والشفاه السفلى ولكن بدون اهتزاز الأحبال الصوتية.
- ينطق حرف (v) باستخدام الأسنان العليا والشفاه السفلى مع اهتزاز الأحبال الصوتية.
- وفيما يلي الكلمات التي تحتوي على الصوتين (f) ، (v).

F /f/ sound



frog ضفدع



scarf وشاح/كوفية



fan مروحة



fruit فاكهة



leaf ورقة شجر



ferry معبدة

V /v/ sound



vet طبيب بيطري



vegetables خضراوات



television

تلفاز



van شاحنة مقلقة



view منظر طبيعي

- |        |      |
|--------|------|
| life   | حياة |
| safe   | آمن  |
| few    | قليل |
| fine   | جميل |
| fast   | سريع |
| friend | صديق |

- |        |            |
|--------|------------|
| leave  | يفادر      |
| live   | يعيش       |
| very   | جداً       |
| save   | يحفظ/ يوفر |
| lovely | جميل       |



## 1 Complete the words with 'f' or 'v'. Then listen and say:

أكمل الكلمات باستخدام الحرفين (F) أو (V) ثم استمع إلى النص:



1. I have a pet ..... rog.



2. Hany is a ..... et.

3. I have a very long  
scar ..... .4. Do you like  
..... egetables?

5. I really like ..... ruit.

6. We like watching  
tele ..... ision .

## 2 Read, listen, and circle. Then listen again and repeat:

اقرأ واستمع ثم ضع دائرة. استمع مرة أخرى وردد النطق:

- |          |      |
|----------|------|
| 1. van   | fan  |
| 2. leave | leaf |
| 3. life  | live |
| 4. ferry | very |
| 5. few   | view |
| 6. safe  | save |

How to make the /f/ sound:

Rest your top teeth on your lower lip.

Blow, but **don't** use your voice!

How to make the /v/ sound:

Rest your top teeth on your lower lip.

Blow, but **do** use your voice!

## 3 Say these sentences. Say them again as fast as you can:

قل هذه الجمل. انطقهم بسرعة على قدر استطاعتك ( لتتمكن من التفرقة بين F و V ):

1. Is there a fan in the very big van?
2. Leave the lovely leaf on the tree!
3. A few friends saw the very fine view.
4. The ferry is very fast!
5. It's safe to save your money here!



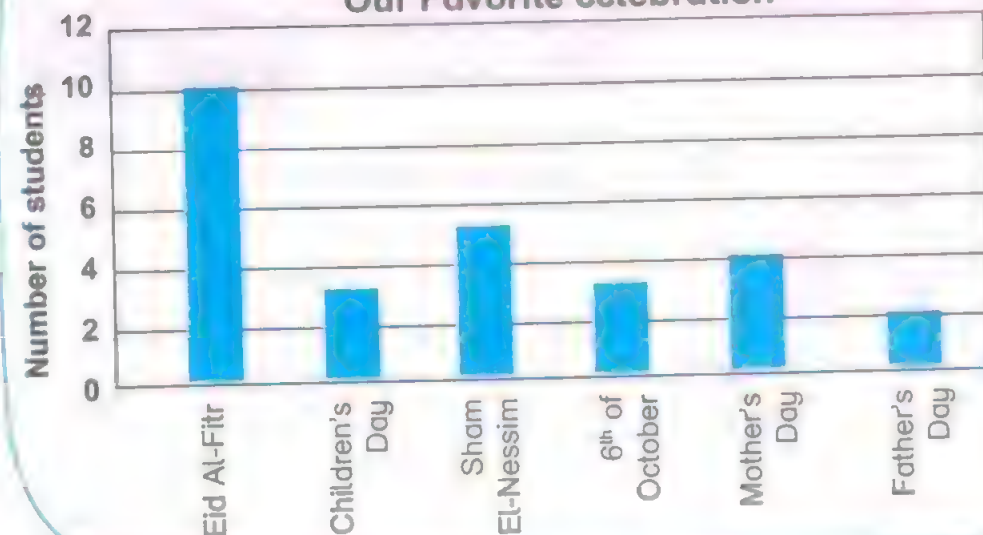
## Math

- يستخدم شريط الرسم البياني لعرض المعلومات على شكل أعمدة وفيما يلي عرض نموذج للرسم البياني باستخدام الأعمدة حيث يمثل احتفال الطلاب ببعض الأعياد:

## A bar graph

الرسم البياني بالأعمدة:

## Our Favorite celebration



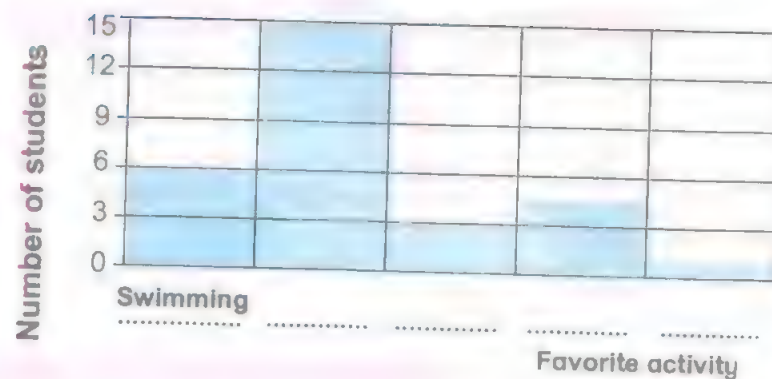
## 1 Look and read. Then label the bar chart: انظر واقرأ. اكمل الرسم البياني:

A bar chart is a way of showing information. Last week, 30 students were asked about their favorite free-time activity to stay healthy. Here is the result of their survey. Which favorite activity was enjoyed by the biggest number of students?

الرسم البياني هو طريقة لعرض المعلومات. تم سؤال ٣٠ تلميذ الأسبوع الماضي عن النشاط المفضل لديهم في أوقات فراغهم للحفاظ على صحتهم. وفيما يلي نتيجة استطلاع الرأي. أي من الأنشطة المفضلة لديه أكبر عدد من التلاميذ؟



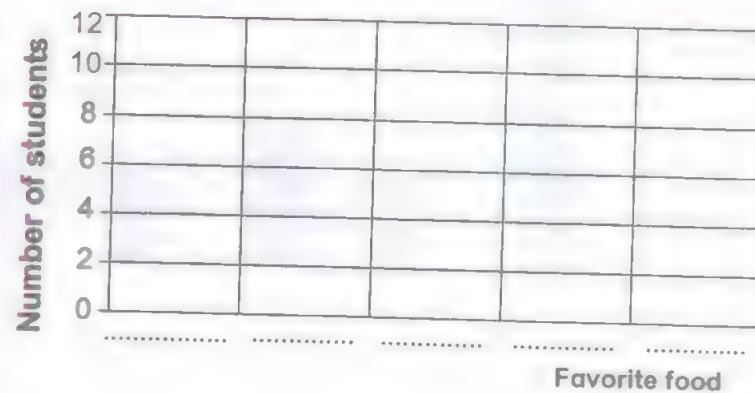
Favorite activity	No. of students
Swimming	6
Football	15
Reading	3
Taking long walks	5
Cooking	1



Now use this table to complete the bar chart:

الآن استخدم هذا الجدول لتكمل الرسم البياني:

Favorite food	No. of students
Ful medames	6
Koshari	6
Kofta	7
Fiteer baladi	9
Shawerma	5



# Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

- 1 Doaa has a sore throat.
- 2 Doaa has honey with lemon.
- 3 Honey isn't useful.
- 4 Some types of honey can kill bacteria.

True False

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>A</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 Bacteria are</li> <li>2 Honey is used</li> <li>3 Honey is good for</li> <li>4 The ferry is</li> <li>5 Bees make</li> </ol> | <p><b>B</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. honey.</li> <li>b. very fast.</li> <li>c. healing wounds.</li> <li>d. as a treatment.</li> <li>e. big leaf.</li> <li>f. very small things that can make you ill.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملًا صحيحة:

1. types - Some - of honey - bacteria - can - kill.

2. week - I - cut - knee - last - my.

3. have - used - honey - Doctors - thousands - for - years - of.

4. substance - is - on Earth - Honey - the sweetest.



## Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i really like fruit

2. do you like vegetables

## Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

مجاب آخر الوحدة

Honey

kill - sore throat



## Lesson 5&amp;6

## Writing

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



playing sports لعب الرياضة  
eating vegetables اكل الخضراوات  
reading books قراءة الكتب  
getting enough sleep النوم بشكل كافى  
visiting a doctor زيارة الدكتور  
balanced diet نظام غذائى متوازن

presentation عرض تقديمى  
spending time with friends قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء  
drinking plenty of water شرب المياه بكمية كبيرة  
expert (s) خبير / خبراء

## Other words



focus on يركز على  
scissors مقص  
insect bite cream كريم ضد لدغ الحشرات  
cleansing wipes مناديل تنظيف مبللة  
stay healthy يحافظ على صحته

exercise تمرين - تدريب  
In addition to بالإضافة إلى  
medical gloves قفازات طبية  
rubber band رباط مطاطى  
safety pin دبوس مشبك

## Conjugation of verbs

صيغ الافعال

## Regular verbs

افعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

look after يعتنى  
exercise يتمرّن  
need يحتاج

Past ماضٍ

looked after  
exercised  
needed

## Irregular verbs

افعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

eat يأكل  
do يفعل  
keep يحافظ  
get يحصل علي  
spend يقضى

Past ماضٍ

ate  
did  
kept  
got  
spent



Language Functions

وظائف لغوية

● لاعطاء النصيحة نستخدم أحد الصيغ الآتية:

● نستخدم (should) لاعطاء النصيحة بمعنى "ينبغي أن، ويأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر،

مصدر الفعل (inf) + should + فاعل (كل الضمانات)

- You should eat healthy foods.

● وهناك صيغة أخرى لاعطاء النصيحة باستخدام "It's important to" من المهم أن .....

مصدر الفعل (inf) + It's important to

- It's important to get enough sleep.

● وهناك صيغة أخرى للنصيحة وهي:

من أفضل الطرق أن. مصدر الفعل (inf) + One of the best ways to

- One of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends.

1 Giving advice  
اعطاء النصيحة

2 It's important

3 One of the best ways

Study the following

1 My presentation today is about staying healthy.

العرض التقديمي اليوم عن كيف تحافظ على صحتك.

2 It's really important to eat healthy foods.

من المهم أن تتناول أطعمة صحية.

3 You should do some exercise every day.

يجب عليك أن تؤدي بعض التمارين كل يوم.

4 It's very important to keep your body moving.

من المهم أن تبقى جسمك في حالة حركة.

5 Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

لعب الرياضة في المدرسة أو مع الأصدقاء طريقة جيدة للتمرين.

6 It's important to get enough sleep.

من المهم أن تنام بشكل كافٍ.

7 Experts think you should get between eight and nine hours of sleep every night.

يعتقد الخبراء بأنك تحتاج من ثمانية إلى تسعة ساعات نوم كل ليلة.

8 You should make time to focus on being happy.

يجب عليك أن تجعل وقتك سعيداً.

9 Spending time with your family and friends is a great way to do this.

قضاء وقت مع الأسرة والأصدقاء طريقة رائعة للسعادة.

1 Read Asma's presentation. Check (✓) the things that she talks about:

اقرأ العرض التقديمي، ولأسماء. ضع علامة ✓ على الأشياء التي تحدثت عنها؟

My list of healthy things to do

playing sport

eating vegetables

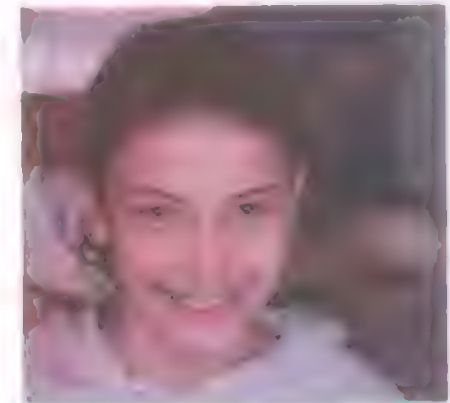
reading books

getting enough sleep

visiting a doctor

spending time with friends

drinking plenty of water



استمع إلى المفردات.

My presentation<sup>(1)</sup> today is about staying healthy. It is **really**<sup>(2)</sup> important to eat healthy foods like fruit and vegetables and to have a balanced diet<sup>(3)</sup>. There are lots of other things that we can do to look after our health.

You should do some exercise every day. It's very important to **keep your body moving**<sup>(4)</sup>. Playing sport at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

Another thing you can do is to go to bed early. **It's important**<sup>(5)</sup> to **get enough sleep**. Experts think you should get **between eight and nine hours of sleep every night**.

**In addition**<sup>(6)</sup> to this, one of the best ways to stay healthy is to spend time with your friends. **It's not only** your body that you need to keep healthy, you should make time to **focus on**<sup>(7)</sup> being happy, too. Spending time with your family and friends is a **great**<sup>(8)</sup> way to do this.

- 1- عرض تقديمي  
2- بالفعل  
3- نظام غذائي متوازن  
4- يحافظ على حركة الجسم  
5- من المهم أن  
6- بالإضافة إلى  
7- يركز  
8- رائع

2 Read Asma's presentation again. Complete the sentences:

اقرأ مقال أسماء مرة أخرى. أكمل الجمل.

- Asma says it's important to eat .....
- Asma says that ..... is a good way to exercise .
- You should sleep between ..... hours every night.
- Spending time with your friends is good for your .....



## Unit 8 At the doctor's

3 Asma's class completed a table about staying healthy. Look at the table. Complete it for you:

أكمل فصل دأسماء، جدول من كيف تحافظ على صحتك انظر إلى الجدول. أكمل الجدول الخاص بك :

Key: 😊😊😊 = very good 😊😊 = OK 😊 = could do better

Eating healthy foods	😊	Eating healthy foods	
Getting enough sleep	😊😊	Getting enough sleep	
Drinking plenty of water	😊😊😊	Drinking plenty of water	
Playing sport	😊😊😊	Playing sport	
Spending time with friends	😊😊	Spending time with friends	

4 Work in groups. Discuss and decide:

You are going on a school trip to the desert.

اعمل في مجموعات وناقش وقرر:

Your class is responsible for packing the first-aid kit. Look at the objects below. In groups, discuss which four items you want to take and why these are the most useful.

Take bandages in case someone cuts their knee.

- سوف تذهب في رحلة مدرسية في الصحراء. وفصلك مسئول عن تعبئة صندوق الإسعافات الأولية. انظر إلى الأشياء بالأسفل. ناقش في مجموعات أي من هذه الأشياء سوف توضع في صندوق الإسعافات الأولية. ولماذا هذه الأشياء مفيدة؟



bandages



sunscreen



scissors



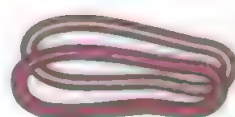
insect bite cream



cleansing wipes



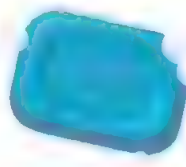
medical gloves



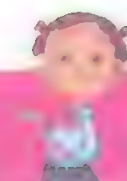
rubber bands



safety pins



soap



## Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

- 1 Soha eats unhealthy foods.
- 2 Soha takes the bus to school.
- 3 Soha's friends keep their body moving.
- 4 Soha spends time with her friends.

True False

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A

- 1 It's really important
- 2 You should sleep
- 3 Spend time with
- 4 We should look
- 5 You should make time to

B

- a. focus on being happy.
- b. after our health.
- c. between 8 to 9 hours of sleep.
- d. body that you need.
- e. to eat healthy foods.
- f. your friends.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملًا صحيحة:

1. today - about - is - My presentation - healthy - staying.

2. should - do - You - exercise - some.

3. sport - a good - Playing - is - to exercise - way.



4. important - It's - enough - get - sleep - to .

5. do - What - stay - do - healthy - you - to?

#### 4 Punctuate the following:

1. you should eat vegetables

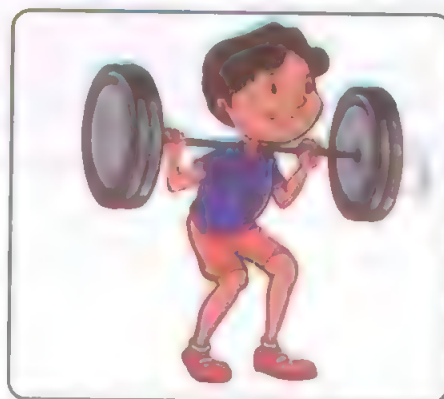
2. what are they good at

#### 5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إرشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

Keeping healthy

exercise - plenty of water



مجاوب آخر الوحدة

## Review

illnesses الأمراض



backache

ألم بالظهر



cold

برد



sore throat

التهاب بالحلق



headache

صداع



earache

ألم بالأذن



toothache

ألم بالأسنان



cough

كحة



bandage

ضمادة



sunscreen

كريم واقى من الشمس



pills

أقراص دواء



honey and lemon

عسل وليمون



wound

جرح



cut knee

جرح بالركبة

Water المياه



fresh water

ماء عذب



salt water

مياه مالحة



glacier

جبل جليدى



lake

بحيرة



river

نهر



ocean

محيط



stream

مجرى / جدول مائى



blind	كفيف	spear	رُمح
trunk	خرطوم الفيل (زلومة)	rope	خَبْل
tusk	ناب الفيل	flexible	مرن / لين
unwell	مريض - ليس بحالة جيدة	family members	أفراد الأسرة
relative (s)	قريب (أقارب)	crowded	مزدحم
staff	هيئة الموظفين	injections	حقن
helpful	مفيد	corridor	طريقة - ممر
treatment	علاج	bacteria	بكتيريا
heal	يلتئم / يشفى	sunburn	حرق شمس
playing sports	لعب الرياضة	presentation	عرض تقديمي
eating vegetables	اكل الخضراوات	spending time with friends	قضاء وقت مع الأصدقاء
reading books	قراءة الكتب	drinking plenty of water	شرب المياه بكمية كبيرة
getting enough sleep	النوم بشكل كافى	expert (s)	خبير / خبراء
visiting a doctor	زيارة الدكتور		
balanced diet	نظام غذائى متوازن		

## Adjectives &amp; opposites الصفات وعكسها

responsible	مسئول	responsible	غير مسئول
legal	شرعى - قانونى	legal	غير قانونى
moral	أخلاقي	moral	غير اخلاقي
polite	مؤدب	polite	غير مؤدب
possible	ممكّن	possible	غير ممكن
fit	لائق بدنيا	fit	غير لائق بدنيا
regular	منتظم	regular	غير منتظم

## Pronunciation

F /f/ sound



frog ضفدع



scarf وشاح / كوفية



fan مروحة



fruit فاكهة

V /v/ sound



vet طبيب بيطرى



vegetables خضراوات



television تلفاز



van شاحنة مغلقة

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

Present مضارع	Past ماضى
hope يأمل	hoped
use يستخدم	used
turn يحول - يلف	turned
care يعتنى بـ	cared
treat يعالج	treated
kill يقتل	killed
heal يلتئم / يشفى	healed
damage يتلف	damaged

## أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

Present مضارع	Past ماضى
have / has مصاب بـ - يملك	had
hurt يؤلم	hurt
fall يقع / يسقط	fell
teach يُدرّس / يعلم	taught
give يعطى	gave
become يصبح	became
cut يجرح	cut
know يعرف	knew
get better يتحسن	got better

## أفعال غير منتظمة

## Grammar

## قواعد لغوية

## Verb to have

- يستخدم الفعل **have / has** للتحدث عن الأمراض بمعنى مصاب بـ كالآتى:

I - you - we - they - اسم جمع → **have**  
 He - she - it - اسم مفرد → **has** + اسم المرض .

1  
have / has  
مصاب بـ- I **have** a headache.- He **has** a sore throat.

والنفسى نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

I - you - we - they - اسم جمع → **don't have**  
 He - she - it - اسم مفرد → **doesn't have** + اسم المرض .

- I **don't** have a headache.- He **doesn't** have a toothache.

وللسؤال نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

Do + I - you - we - they - اسم جمع + **have**  
 Does + he - she - it - اسم مفرد + **have** ؟ اسم المرض ؟

- Do you **have** a cold? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.- Does he **have** a cold? Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.



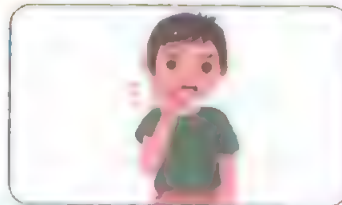
Write a paragraph of forty (40) words

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 2

A toothache

- 1 I had a toothache yesterday. I told my father. My father took me to the dentist. The dentist gave me some medicine. I took the medicine. I felt better. My father told me not to eat many sweets.



Lesson 4

Honey

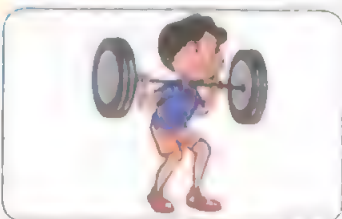
- 2 Honey is very useful. I enjoy eating it for breakfast. Honey contains things that can help to kill bacteria. It helps wound to heal more quickly. When you have a sore throat, you can have honey with lemon.



Lesson 5-6

Keeping healthy

- 3 It's important to keep healthy. You should do sports. Playing sport at school is a great way to exercise. You should drink plenty of water. The best thing to do is to eat healthy foods. You should have a balanced diet.



Activity Unit 8

A cold

- 4 I had a cold last week. I didn't feel better. I went to the doctor's. The doctor told me to stay home. The doctor gave me some pills. I took the pills. I felt better today. I stayed home for three days.



A- Listening

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختر:

1. I get up at ..... o'clock.

(six - seven - eight)

2. I like .....

(apples - honey - oranges)

B- Language Functions

- 2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

matter - doctor's - going

A : Where are you .....?

B : I'm going to the .....

A : What's the .....?

B : I have a stomachache.

C- Reading Comprehension

- 3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Yesterday, I went to the club. I was very sad. My friend Samir hurt his ankle at football practice. My friend Yasser had an earache from swimming. They went to the hospital. I was worried about my friends.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Yesterday, I went to the .....

(club - park - zoo)

2. I was very .....

(happy - sad - nice)

3. My friend Samir hurt his ..... at football practice

(foot - arm - ankle)

4. My friend Yasser had an earache from .....

(football - swimming - volleyball)

5. I was worried about my .....

(brothers - sisters - friends)



## D- Vocabulary and Structure

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

## 1 Choose the correct answer:

- Do you ..... an earache?  
a have                      b has                      c had
- I have a pet .....  
a lion                      b frog                      c elephant
- What ..... the matter, Wael?  
a am                      b are                      c is
- Doctors work in a .....  
a school                      b hospital                      c farm
- No, I ..... have a sore throat.  
a does                      b do                      c don't

## E- The Reader

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

## 5 Choose the correct answer:

- Youssef's job helps us to learn about the .....  
a future                      b past                      c present
- Mom says, There's a beautiful nature ..... there .  
a trail                      b lake                      c farm

## F- Writing

## 6 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن:

Water



## Activity

## on Unit 8

## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

استمع إلى النص آخر الكتاب

	True	False
1 I like unhealthy food.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 It is important to eat fruit and vegetables.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 We should do some exercise every day.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 It's very important to keep our body moving.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

## 2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

- Fares didn't go to ..... yesterday.
- Fares had an .....
- Fares went to swimming .....
- Fares took .....

## 3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- A
- I hope they'll
  - What's
  - A tusk is
  - My tooth
  - A blind man

- B
- the matter?
  - can't see.
  - feel better tomorrow.
  - a very long nose.
  - a long pointed tooth.
  - hurts.



## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Hazem. My uncle Hani is ill in the hospital in Giza. Our relatives visit him. There are many **patients**. The hospital treats patients from all over the country. The nurses are friendly. The doctors examine patients and give them medicine. My father and I visit him every day. There are many people in the hospital. The hospital is very crowded on Fridays. I come back home. I hope my uncle feel better.

## A. Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "**patients**" means ..... people.  
☐ a well      ☐ b sick      ☐ c happy      ☐ d tall
- The hospital is in .....  
☐ a Cairo      ☐ b Aswan      ☐ c Giza      ☐ d Luxor

## B. Answer the following questions:

- When is the hospital crowded? .....
- What do the doctors give patients? .....

## 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- last - cut - week - I - knee - my. ....
- kill - Some - types of - bacteria - can - honey. ....
- worried - about - my - friends - my. ....
- stomach - Does - your - hurt? ....

## 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

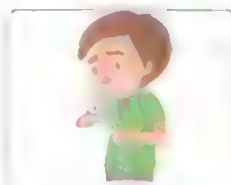
- 1- it really hurts .....
- 2- do you have a sore throat .....

## 7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

A cold

cold - medicine

مجاب آخر الوحدة



## My society

## Unit

## 9

## My favorite animal

حيواني المفضل



## Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research and write about animals.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويعمل بحث ويكتب عن الحيوانات.

2. Listen and read about a trip to a wildlife park.

- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ عن رحلة إلى حديقة الحياة البرية.

3. Learn how to say /w/ and /v/ sounds.

- يتعلم الطالب كيفية نطق حرفي /w/ و /v/.

4. Write an email about an unusual animal.

- يكتب الطالب إيميل عن حيوان غير مألوف (غريب).

5. Research and make an infographic about animals in a habitat.

- يقوم الطالب بعمل بحث ومخطط معلومات بياني عن حيوانات في بيئة ما.





## 1

## Wildlife الحياة البرية

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



الباندا



خفاش



حيوان الكونغر



أسد



بطريق

Animals  
الحيوانات

دولفين



حلزون



ببغاء

beautiful  
colorful  
friendly  
different  
amazing

جميل  
زاهي / كثير الألوان  
ودود / أليف  
مختلف  
مدهش

strong  
wonderful  
awesome  
sweet  
cool

قوي  
رائع  
مذهل  
جميل  
رائع جذاب



wildlife park  
shell  
sleep upside down  
snow  
ice  
fridge  
the rainforest  
a bit sad

حديقة الحياة البرية  
قوقعة  
ينام بالمقلوب  
جليد  
ثلج  
ثلاجة  
غابة مطيرة  
حزين قليلاً

Australia  
Africa  
China  
the ocean  
bamboo  
pouch  
the dark  
rabbit

أستراليا  
أفريقيا  
الصين  
المحيط  
نبات الخيزران  
جراب / كيس في أسفل بطن الكونغر  
الظلام  
ارنب

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

jump	يقفز	jumped
live	يعيش	lived
stay	يمكث	stayed
want	يريد	wanted
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed
repeat	يردد	repeated

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

## Present مضارع

## Past ماضٍ

fly	يطير	flew
swim	يعوم	swam
sleep	ينام	slept
hide	يختبئ	hid
feed	يطعم	fed
see	يري	saw

## Study the following

- I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.  
- لقد قضيت يوماً رائعاً في الخارج مع عائلتي بالأمس.
- I went to the new wildlife park.  
- ذهبت إلى حديقة الحياة البرية الجديدة.
- The kangaroos were so fascinating, too.  
- كانت حيوانات الكونغر مثيرة للاهتمام أيضاً.
- When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch.  
- عندما يكونوا صغاراً، يجلسون داخل جراب أمهم.
- We said some words for them to repeat.  
- قلنا لهم بعض الكلمات ليرددوها.
- They were all hiding and I couldn't see them in the dark.  
- كانوا جميعاً مختبئون ولم أستطع رؤيتهم في الظلام.
- Could you go near the lions?  
- هل استطعت أن تذهب بالقرب من الأسود؟
- They were in a special place inside.  
- كانوا (البطريق) في مكان خاص بالداخل.



- 9 They can swim so well. - يمكنهم السباحة جيداً
- 10 I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms. - لدي قوقعة ليس لدي أرجل أو أيدي.
- 11 I live in Australia. I jump on two legs. - أعيش في أستراليا، أقفز على رجلين.
- 12 I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees. - أطيّر في الليل. أنام بالمقلوب على الأشجار.
- 13 I swim in a group with my family in the ocean. - أسبح في مجموعة مع عائلتي في المحيط.

### 1 Listen and read. Then say the words: استمع واقرأ. ثم قل الكلمات:



### 2 Read the clues. Write the correct animals:

اقرأ مفاتيح حل الألغاز. اكتب الحيوانات الصحيحة:

- I live in the garden. I have a shell. I don't have legs or arms. snail
- I live in Australia. I jump on two legs. kangaroo
- I fly at night. I sleep upside down on trees. \_\_\_\_\_
- I live on ice and snow. I'm black and white. I can swim, but I can't fly. \_\_\_\_\_
- I am a bird. I am very beautiful and colorful. I live in the rainforest. \_\_\_\_\_
- I live in Africa. I'm a very big cat. I am very strong. \_\_\_\_\_
- I am very friendly. I swim in a group with my family in the ocean. \_\_\_\_\_
- I live in China. I eat bamboo. I'm big, and black and white. \_\_\_\_\_

### 3 Read. Where did Ramez go yesterday?

اقرأ. أين ذهب رامي بالأمس؟

#### Tapescript

#### نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



Ramez : Hi! I had a wonderful day out yesterday with my family.

Ayman : Where did you go?

Ramez : I went to the new wildlife park<sup>(1)</sup> - it was awesome<sup>(2)</sup>!

Ayman : What did you see? Could you go near the lions?

Ramez : No, we stayed in the car. But we could see them through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they are little, they can sit inside their mom's pouch<sup>(3)</sup> - it's so sweet!

Ayman : What birds did you see?

Ramez : Lots, but my favorites were the parrots. They were so beautiful and they could talk! We said some words for them to repeat!

Ayman : What about animals that like the cold? Did you see any?

Ramez : Yes, penguins! They were in a special<sup>(4)</sup> place inside. It was cold, like a fridge<sup>(5)</sup>. We fed them some fish! I love penguins - they can swim so well and they look so cool!

Ayman : Wow! Was there anything you wanted to see but couldn't?

Ramez : The bats. I'm doing a project on bats at school, so I really wanted to see them! But they were all hiding<sup>(6)</sup> and I couldn't see them in the dark!

Ayman : Oh well, it sounds<sup>(7)</sup> amazing! I've got to feed my rabbit now - that's the most wildlife I'll see today!

- أحديقة الحياة البرية ١  
رائع ٢  
جوارح الشجر ٣  
حاض ٤  
ثلاجة ٥  
مختبئون ٦  
يترو ٧

### 4 Complete the summary with the words in the box:

أكمل الملخص بكلمات من القائمة:

project - sad - parrots - park - enjoyed - lions

Yesterday, Ramez went to a wildlife <sup>1</sup> park with his family. He <sup>2</sup> enjoyed it very much. They saw lots of different animals like <sup>3</sup> parrots, kangaroos, and penguins. He saw his favorite birds, the <sup>4</sup> lions. He was a bit <sup>5</sup> sad because he didn't see the bats and he's doing a <sup>6</sup> project on them at school.



# Activities



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

	True	False
1 My uncle has a rabbit.		
2 Pingo is the parrot's name.		
3 Pingo can talk and repeat words.		
4 Pingo's legs are beautiful.		

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 I went to	a project about wildlife.
2 Ramez's doing	on two legs.
3 The lion is	eats bamboo.
4 A kangaroo jumps	but it can't fly.
5 A penguin can swim,	a wildlife park yesterday.
	a very big cat.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. doesn't - legs - have - or - have - arms.
2. yesterday - go - Ramez - Where - did?
3. lives - in - The - China - panda.
4. see - birds - What - you - did?

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

1. i couldn't see bats in the dark
2. could you go near the lions

## Lesson 2

## What could you do? Part 1

### Vocabulary



quickly	بسرعة	busy	مشغول
very fast	بسرعة جداً	German	اللغة الألمانية
use a computer	يستخدم كمبيوتر	Italian	اللغة الإيطالية
play chess	يلعب الشطرنج	French	اللغة الفرنسية
amazed	متدهش	France	فرنسا
speak English	يتحدث اللغة الإنجليزية		

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Irregular verbs

Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي	Present	مضارع	Past	ماضي
speak	يتحدث	spoke		take	يأخذ	took	
fly	يطير	flew		ride	يركب	rode	
run	يجري	ran		read	يقرأ	read	
drive	يقود	drove		swim	يسبح	swam	

### Study the following

- 1 Birds can fly. تستطيع الطيور ان تطير.
- 2 Lions can run very fast. تستطيع الأسود الجري بسرعة جداً.
- 3 Bats can sleep upside down on trees. تنام الخفافيش بالمقلوب على الأشجار.
- 4 Snails can live in shells. تعيش الحلزونات في قواقع.



## Grammar

## قواعد لغوية

1

للتعبير عن:  
استطاعة فعل  
شيء في الحاضر  
نستخدم:

- Birds **can** fly.
- I **can** play basketball.

فعل في المصدر + can + فاعل

في النفي نستخدم: فعل في المصدر + can't + فاعل

- Pandas **can't** drive a car.
- I **can't** speak Italian.

في السؤال نستخدم: فعل في المصدر + can + فاعل ؟

- **Can** you play tennis?

لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد can / can't

في الاثبات: فعل في المصدر + could + فاعل

- I **could** run fast last year.

في النفي: فعل في المصدر + couldn't + فاعل

- I **couldn't** take the bus so I had to walk.

في السؤال: فعل في المصدر + could + فاعل ؟

- **Could** you play the piano last year?

لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد could / couldn't

ويمكن استخدام when مع could / couldn't كما يلي:

فعل في المصدر + could / couldn't + فاعل + ماضي بسيط + فاعل + When  
عندما

- When I **lived** in France, I **could** speak French.
- OR: I **could** speak French **when** I **lived** in France.

لاحظ استخدام comma ( , ) إذا بدأنا الجملة بـ When

الماضي البسيط + فاعل + when + فعل في المصدر + فاعل + Could ؟

- **Could** you ride a bike when you **were** three?

## 1 Read and match:

اقرأ واصل.

A	B
birds	a. can live in shells
lions	b. can sleep upside down on trees
snails	c. can fly
bats	d. can run very fast

## 2 Write can or can't:

اكتب يستطيع أو لا يستطيع.

1. Bats **can** fly very fast.
2. Snails ..... move quickly.
3. Parrots ..... fly.
4. Pandas ..... drive a car.

## 3 Write could or couldn't:

اكتب استطاع أو لم يستطع.

1. When I was two, I **couldn't** use a computer.
2. I ..... read when I was one.
3. My sister ..... play chess when she was five, but she ..... when she was eight.
4. My cousin ..... run when he was a baby.
5. I ..... swim when I was a baby, and everyone was amazed.
6. .... you speak English when you were five?

## 4 Circle the correct word:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمة الصحيحة.

1. I couldn't say anything in German last year, but now I .....  
☐ a can      ☐ b can't      ☐ c could
2. Last year, he ..... run very quickly, but now he can.  
☐ a can't      ☐ b could      ☐ c couldn't
3. .... you play the piano when you were a child?  
☐ a Can      ☐ b Could      ☐ c Can't
4. Sorry, I ..... help you with your homework. I'm busy.  
☐ a can      ☐ b can't      ☐ c could



# The travelers and the tree

## Part 2

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



nuts  
مكسرات



exhausted  
منهك (متعب جدًا)



branch of a tree  
فرع شجرة



trunk of a tree  
جذع شجرة

wide	واسع - عريض
famous	مشهور
shelter	مأوى
rest	يستريح / راحة
comfortable	مريح
save	ينقل
angry	غاضب

shade	ظل
traders	تجار
meeting point	مكان للتجمع (للقاء)
breeze	نسيم (رياح خفيفة)
useless	عديم الفائدة
ungrateful	ناكر الجميل
unkind	غير عطوف



a breeze نسيم a little wind

useless عديم الفائدة we can't use it

ungrateful ناكر للجميل don't thank others for doing something good.

comfortable مريح it's nice to sit on or wear.

a meeting point نقطة التقاء / تجمع somewhere where people meet.

### Study the following

1 Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land.

- كان يوجد شجرة كبيرة الحجم والعمر في يوم حار وجاف.

2 Its trunk was very wide and it had many green branches.

- كان جذعها (الشجرة) عريض جدًا ولديها الكثير من الفروع الخضراء.

3 It was a meeting point for traders.

- كانت نقطة (مكان) لقاء للتجار.

4 They enjoyed the shade and the cool breeze. - استمتعوا بالظل والنسيم الرائع.

5 As they were exhausted, they soon fell asleep.

- بمجرد أن شعروا بالتعب الشديد، خلدوا إلى النوم في الحال.

6 There are no nuts or fruit on its branches. - لا يوجد مكسرات أو فواكهة في فروعها.

7 You came to me feeling hot and tired. - أتيت إلى و أنت تشعر بالحر والإرهاق.

8 I gave you a cool, comfortable place to sleep and I probably saved your life. - اعطيتك مكان مريح ورائع للنوم وربما انقذت حياتك.

9 The travelers looked around them and saw the tree and correct and felt very sorry. - نظر المسافرون حولهم وراوا أن الشجرة على حق وشعروا بالندم.

10 It's important to give value to the small things in our lives.

- من المهم أن نعطى قيمة للأشياء الصغيرة في حياتنا.

1 Match the words to the photos. Check in a dictionary:

صل الكلمات بالصور. تأكد من القاموس:

a



c



1 trunk of a tree

2 branch of a tree

3 nuts

4 exhausted

b



d





### 3 Read and listen to a fable by Aesop. Why was the tree angry?

اقرأ واستمع إلى أسطورة خرافية كتبها "إيسوب". لماذا كانت الشجرة غاضبة؟

استمع إلى النص:



Once there was a very big old tree in a hot, dry land. It had lived for many years. Its trunk was very wide and it had many green **branches**<sup>(1)</sup>. It was famous because it was the only tree where it lived, and it gave **shelter**<sup>(2)</sup> and **rest**<sup>(3)</sup> to hundreds of travelers as they moved across the country.

It was near four towns and many villages in its **area**<sup>(4)</sup> and was a **meeting point**<sup>(5)</sup> for traders.

One day two travelers, who were new to the area, were walking across the field and saw the tree. It was a very hot, dry day and one of them said, "Let's stop under that tree, where there's some **shade**<sup>(6)</sup>." "That's a very good idea," said his friend. They rested under the tree and drank some water. They then enjoyed the shade and the cool **breeze**<sup>(7)</sup>. As they were **exhausted**<sup>(8)</sup>, they soon fell asleep.

When they **woke up**<sup>(9)</sup>, one of the travelers felt hungry. **Neither of them**<sup>(10)</sup> had any food in their bags so they looked up at the branches of the tree. "This tree is **useless**<sup>(11)</sup>," one of them said. "It has no food for us - there are no **nuts**<sup>(12)</sup> or fruit on its branches." "But it has shade and it's keeping us cool," said the other.

But the tree heard the first traveler's words and it was angry. "How can you be so **ungrateful**<sup>(13)</sup>?" It said, "You came to me feeling hot and tired. I gave you a cool, **comfortable**<sup>(14)</sup> place to sleep and I **probably**<sup>(15)</sup> **saved**<sup>(16)</sup> your life. Look, there is no other cool place to sleep near here. "The travelers looked around them and saw the tree was **correct**<sup>(17)</sup> and felt very sorry.

- ١- افرع
- ٢- مأوى
- ٣- راحة
- ٤- محطة
- ٥- مكان للجمع
- ٦- ظل
- ٧- سقيم
- ٨- منهك
- ٩- استنمط
- ١٠- ولا واحد منهم
- ١١- عديم الفائدة
- ١٢- مكسرات
- ١٣- ناكر الحميل
- ١٤- مريح
- ١٥- من المحتمل
- ١٦- انقذ
- ١٧- صحيح

### 5 Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

حدد إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أو خاطئة. صحح الجمل الخاطئة في كراستك.

1. The tree was in a field with many other trees. **F**
2. It was a cool, rainy day.
3. The travelers were tired.
4. The travelers were thirsty.
5. Both the travelers were ungrateful to the tree.
6. In the end the travelers were sad about being unkind to the tree.

### 4 Look at the underlined words in the story. Circle the correct definition:

1. A breeze is a little wind / lake.
2. When something is useless, we can / can't use it.
3. When someone is ungrateful, they thank / don't thank others for doing something good.
4. When something is comfortable, it's nice / not nice to sit on or wear.
5. A meeting point is somewhere where people leave / meet.

### 5 Work in pairs. Answer the questions.

#### 1. What do you think the moral of the story is?

في رأيك ما الدرس الأخلاقي في القصة؟

- ☒ It's important to plant lots of trees.
- ☒ It's important to give value to the small things in our lives.
- ☒ It's important to take food when you travel.

#### 2. What do you think the travelers said to the tree at the end?

في رأيك ماذا قال المسافرين للشجرة في النهاية؟

### 6 Work in pairs. Answer the questions. Use the photos below to help you with your answers:

اعمل في ثنائيات. أجب عن الأسئلة. استخدم الصور بالأسفل لتساعدك في إجابتك.

1. Why are trees important for humans?
2. Why are trees important for animals?
3. Why is it important to plant trees?





# Activities



## 1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

- At five, I could swim and .....
- My brother was ..... years younger than me.
- Now, I can use a .....
- My brother can swim and .....

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

1 A meeting point is

2 I couldn't read

3 They were exhausted,

4 Why was

5 Trees give us

a it had many green branches.

b shade and the cool breeze.

c the tree angry?

d somewhere where people meet.

e when I was two.

f so they fell asleep.

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

My name's Nadia. I have two brothers and a sister. When we were children, we could do many things. My brothers Adel and Walid could play football. I could play the piano.

My sister, Soha could run. Walid couldn't do his homework. I helped him. My mother could cook delicious food, but we couldn't cook any food. Now we grow up and we can cook all kinds of food and help our mother.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Nadia has .....  
☐ a no sisters    ☐ b a sister    ☐ c three sisters    ☐ d two sisters
- ..... couldn't do homework.  
☐ a Nadia    ☐ b Walid    ☐ c Adel    ☐ d Soha

## B. Answer the following questions:

3. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.

4. Could Nadia play the piano?

## 4 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات للكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. couldn't - speak - We - German.

2. rested - under - They - tree - the.

3. ungrateful - be - How - so - can - you?

4. trees - for - Why - humans - are - important?

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i couldn't take the bus

2. What s the moral lesson of the story

## 6 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

Things you could do when you were little.

walk - ride a bike





# CLIL Science (Part 1)

## The water cycle

دورة الماء

### Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



clouds

سحب



the sun

الشمس



evaporation

التبخر



المطول (مطر / جليد)



stream

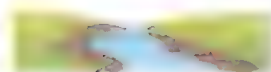
جدول مائي

### The water cycle

دورة الماء

groundwater

مياه جوفية



river

نهر

### Other words

planet Earth  
faucet  
process  
field  
ocean  
rainwater  
snow

كوكب الأرض  
صنبور  
عملية  
حقل  
محيط  
مياه المطر  
جليد

ice  
go straight  
water vapor  
air  
get cooler  
ground

ثلج  
تذهب مباشرة  
بخار الماء  
هواء  
تصبح باردة  
الأرض

### Conjugation of verbs

المضارع / الماضي

#### Regular verbs

Present مضارع

call يسمي  
change يتغير  
start يبدأ  
form يشكل  
warm يدفئ

أفعال منتظمة

Past ماضٍ

called  
changed  
started  
formed  
warmed

#### Irregular verbs

Present مضارع

fall يقع  
become يصبح  
smell يشم  
get يصبح  
rise يرتفع

أفعال غير منتظمة

Past ماضٍ

fell  
became  
smelt  
got  
rose

### Study the following

- 1 Rain falls from clouds in the sky. - يسقط المطر من السحب في السماء.
- 2 Some rainwater goes straight into the ground. - بعض من مياه الأمطار تذهب إلى الأرض بطريقة مباشرة.
- 3 The sun warms the rainwater and it becomes water vapor. - الشمس تدفئ مياه الأمطار وتصبح بخار الماء.
- 4 As the clouds become bigger, the water in them gets heavier. - بمجرد أن تكبر السحب يصبح الماء بها أثقل.
- 5 The clouds get heavier and rain falls again. - تصبح السحب أثقل ويسقط المطر مرة أخرى.

- 1 Work with a partner. Look and check (✓) the things we need water for. Can you think of more examples? Why is water so important?

أعمل مع زميلك. انظر وضع علامة (✓) على الأشياء التي تحتاج فيها الماء. هل تستطيع أن تفكر في أمثلة أكثر؟ لماذا الماء مهم جدًا؟

1



2



3



4



5



6





2 Work with a partner. Discuss.

اعمل مع زميلك. ناقش.

1. Look at the photo of planet Earth - how much do you think is water?
2. Where does water come from? Circle the words below which are made of water.

house	river	car	lake
snow	ice	cat	rain
faucet	cloud	ocean	field



3 Read and listen:

اقرأ واستمع.

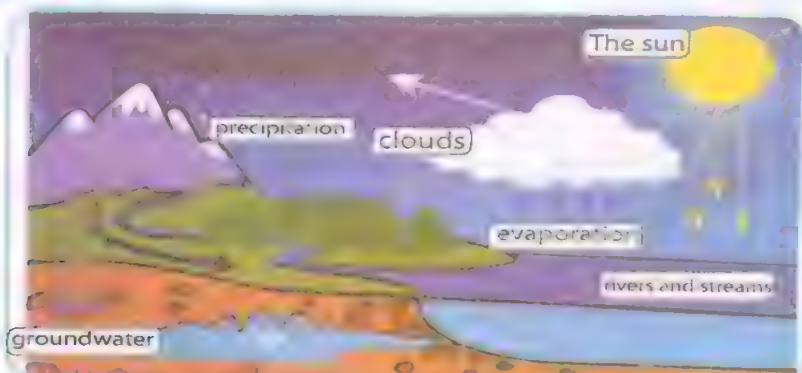
استمع إلى النص.

Where does our water come from?

Rain falls from <sup>(1)</sup> in the sky. Some rainwater goes straight into the <sup>(2)</sup>. But a lot of it goes into <sup>(3)</sup>, rivers, lakes, and then the ocean. This <sup>(4)</sup> is called <sup>(5)</sup>.

Some of the rainwater changes - the sun warms it and it becomes water <sup>(6)</sup>. This process is called "evaporation". We cannot see or smell the water vapor and it doesn't stay on the ground. It rises in the air and, as it gets cooler high up in the sky, it changes back into water and forms clouds. As the clouds become bigger, the water in them gets <sup>(7)</sup>.

When the water in the clouds gets heavier, it falls to the ground, and the cycle starts again.



4 Complete the sentences with words from Exercise 3:

1. .... falls from the clouds.
2. The .... warms the rainwater and it becomes water vapor.
3. The .... rises and changes into water.
4. The water forms .....
5. The clouds get ..... and rain falls again.

أكمل الجمل باستخدام الكلمات في التمرين ٣.

CLIL: Social studies (Part 2)

دراسات اجتماعية

Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات.



جندي



فرعون / pharaoh



كاتب



نحات / رسام

Jobs in Ancient Egypt  
وظائف في مصر القديمة



فلاح

in charge

مسؤول

guarded

حُكِمَتْ

nobles

النبلاء

letters

خطابات

taxes

الضرائب

records

سجلات

the army

الجيش

chariots

مركبات حربية قديمة

trader

تاجر



role

دور

kingdom

مملكة

society

مجتمع

jewelry

مجوهرات

closely

بشكل مقرب

goods

سلع



## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

## أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

## أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
produce ينتج	produced أنتج	buy يشتري	bought اشترى
rule يحكم	ruled حكم	sell يبيع	sold باع
organize ينظم	organized أنظم	take يأخذ	took أخذ
need يحتاج	needed احتاج	grow يزرع	grew زرع
work يعمل	worked عمل	keep يحافظ على	kept احتفظ
collect يجمع	collected جمع		
guard يحكم	guarded حوّل		

## Study the following

- Lots of different people played important roles in Ancient Egyptian society.  
- أدى الكثير من الناس المختلفة أدوار هامة في المجتمع المصري القديم.
- The person in charge was the pharaoh.  
- كان الشخص المسئول هو الفرعون.
- He worked closely with nobles.  
- عمل بالقرب من النبلاء.
- The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers.  
- جمع النبلاء الضرائب ونظموا الجنود.
- Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe.  
- كان الجنود مشغولون بالمحافظة على مصر في أمان.
- The army was strong until the soldiers were good at their jobs.  
- كان الجيش قوي والجنود جيدين في وظائفهم.
- Scribes wrote many different things like letters, records and important papers.  
- كتب الكتّاب الكثير من الأشياء المختلفة مثل الخطابات والسجلات والأوراق الهامة.
- Traders were the people who bought and sold everything in Ancient Egyptian society.  
- التجار هم الناس الذين كانوا يشترون ويبيعون كل شيء في مجتمع القدماء المصريين.
- Artisans took the materials from the traders and made them into things for people.  
- أخذوا النحاتين المواد الخام من التجار وصنعوا منها أشياء للناس.

Ancient Egyptian Society  
مجتمع مصر القديمة

## 1 Read and listen. Who are the people in the photos?

اقرأ واستمع. ما هم الناس في الصور؟

1



Soldier

2



3



استمع إلى النص:



Lots of different people played important **roles**<sup>(1)</sup> in Ancient Egyptian society. The person in charge was the pharaoh. The pharaoh needed lots of people to help him. He worked **closely**<sup>(2)</sup> with **nobles**<sup>(3)</sup>, and they looked after different things. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers.

**Soldiers** were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers guarded the **kingdom**<sup>(4)</sup>. The army was strong, and the soldiers were good at their jobs.

**Scribes** were very important because they were usually the only people who could read and write. They **trained**<sup>(5)</sup> for about 12 years before they wrote on **papyrus**<sup>(6)</sup>. They wrote many different things like letters, records, and important papers. Without the scribes, we would know almost nothing about Ancient Egypt today.

**Traders** were the people who bought and sold everything in Ancient Egyptian society - food, clothes, jewelry, soldiers' uniforms, ships, and **materials**<sup>(7)</sup> for **building**<sup>(8)</sup>.

**Artisans** took the materials from the traders and made them into things for people to use, like **furniture**<sup>(9)</sup>, **chariots**<sup>(10)</sup>, and clothes.

**Farmers** produced the food that was **eaten**<sup>(11)</sup> by the pharaoh, the nobles, the soldiers, the scribes, the traders, and the artisans.

## Arabic Meaning

- أدوار
- بالقرب
- النبلاء
- المملكة
- تدربوا
- ورق البردي
- مواد خام
- البناء
- الآلات
- مركبات حربية
- يأكل



2 Read again. Complet the diagram with the words in the box:

اقرأ مرة أخرى. أكمل الشكل بكلمات من القائمة.

artisans - nobles - scribes



3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل.

A	B
1 pharaoh	a. They grew the food for everyone.
2 soldiers	b. He ruled the country.
3 scribes	c. They wrote everything for the people.
4 traders	d. They kept Ancient Egyptians safe.
5 farmers	e. They bought and sold all the goods.



# Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ).

1 We should use too much water.

2 We need water for plants.

3 We need water in our life.

4 We must save water.

True False

2 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل.

1 Some of the rainwater goes

2 The soldiers were

3 The nobles

4 We can't see

5 Where does water

a. collected taxes.

b. or smell the water vapor.

c. come from?

d. straight into the ground.

e. good at their jobs.

f. the clouds get heavier.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النقطه واجب عن الأسئلة.

Yesterday, I went to the Alexandria Library and read a book about the Ancient Egyptian society. I learnt many things about Ancient Egyptians. There were many important jobs. Each job did useful things to the Ancient Egyptian society. When we go to the museums and temples, we can see how the Ancient Egyptians were great people.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Each job did ..... things to the Ancient Egyptian society.

a useless

b useful

c bad

d unimportant

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة



## Unit 9

2. We can see in the ..... how the Ancient Egyptians were great.

- ☐ a parks ☐ b temples ☐ c houses ☐ d hospitals

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where did the writer go yesterday?

4. What did the writer read at the library?

4. Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1. water - Why - important - is - so?

2. from - falls - the - clouds - the.

3. wrote - everything - the - the people - for.

4. safe - busy - the - keeping - were - Egypt.

5. Punctuate the following:

1. traders bought and sold everything

2. which things are made of water

6. Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

Life in Ancient Egypt

farmers - soldiers



## Lesson

# 4

\* This is so interesting

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



famous	مشهور	Arsenal	ارسنال (نادي انجليزي)
excellent	ممتاز	relax	يستريح
professional	محترف	ring	يرن
clear	واضح		

### Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

نضيف (-er) إلى نهاية الكلمة أو الفعل لتكوين الاسم:

الفعل	الاسم	الفعل	الاسم
teach	يدرس	teacher	مدرس
read	يقرأ	reader	قارئ
farm	مزرعة	farmer	فلاح
football	كرة القدم	footballer	لاعب كرة قدم
travel	يسافر	traveler	مسافر
climb	يتسلق	climber	متسلق

Suffix

(-er) اللاحقة

نضيف (ing) أو (ed) إلى نهاية الفعل لتكوين الصفة.

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) يحذف ونضيف (ing) أو (ed).

لاحظ الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (ed) توصف الشئ أو الشخص الذي يتأثر أو يشعر بالصفة أما الصفات التي تنتهي بـ (ing) تصف الشئ أو الشخص الذي يسبب الصفة.

Adjectives end with (ing) - (ed)

صفات تنتهي بـ (ing) أو بـ (ed)

Verbs		Adjectives with (ed)		Adjectives with (ing)	
أفعال		صفات تنتهي بـ (ed)		صفات تنتهي بـ (ing)	
annoy	يزعج	annoyed	منزعج	annoying	مزعج
amaze	يندهش	amazed	مندهش	amazing	مدهش
interest	يهتم	interested	مهتم	interesting	شيق
tire	يتعب	tired	متعب	tiring	متعب
surprise	يندهش	surprised	مندهش	surprising	مفاجئ



1 Listen and repeat the words: استمع وردد الكلمات

2 Listen again and write the (er) words: استمع مرة أخرى واكتب الكلمات به (er)



t.....



r.....



c.....



f.....



f.....



t.....

3 Complete the sentences with words from Exercise 2:

أكمل الجمل بكلمات من التمرين رقم ٢

1. My grandfather was a great ..... . He traveled to many great places around the world.

2. A famous Egyptian ..... in England is Mohamed Elneny - he plays for Arsenal.

3. My favorite ..... is Miss Salwa - she's very friendly and kind in the classroom.

4. My cousin is a very good ..... - he reads about 20 books a year.

1 Add (-ed) and (-ing) to the verbs to make adjectives:

أضف (ing) أو (ed) للأفعال لتكوين الصفات

1. annoy → annoyed , annoying

2. amaze → ..... , .....

3. interest → ..... , .....

4. tire → ..... , .....

5. surprise → ..... , .....

6. interest → ..... , .....

2 Complete the crossword with words from Exercises 1 - 4

أكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة بالكلمات من التمارين ١ - ٤

Across:

1. Mr Mahmoud is an excellent

..... . He plants the best tomatoes in town!

3. That long walk was very

..... . I can't wait to get home and relax!

5. My uncle's a professional

..... . He goes up some very high mountains.

Down:

2. I find my phone really

..... when it rings while I'm sleeping.

4. Mr Eissa is a great..... .

He makes everything clear in our lessons.







## Pronunciation

استمع إلى النص:



- لاحظ نطق حرفي (Vv) / (Ww) من الأصوات التي تهتز فيها الأحبال الصوتية (voiced sound) حيث تضع يديك على الحنجرة وتشعر باهتزاز عند نطقهم.

/Ww/

- لاحظ عند نطق حرف /Ww/ نعمل دائرة ضيقة بالشفتين.



Winter

الشتاء



Wheel

عجلة (إطار سيارة)



Wet

مبلل



Whale

حوت



Watermelon

بطيخة



West

الغرب



Water

ماء



Wednesday

الأربعاء

/Vv/

- لاحظ عند نطق حرف (Vv) نضغط بالأسنان العليا على الجزء السفلي للشفة.



Vet

طبيب بيطري



Violin

آلة الكمان



Volcano

بركان



Vase

زهريّة



Vest

سترة (صديري)



Village

قرية

1 Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen again and check:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الكلمة التي تسمعها. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وتأكد.

استمع إلى النص آخر الكتاب.

- |         |     |           |         |          |        |
|---------|-----|-----------|---------|----------|--------|
| 1. west | vet | 2. wheel  | whale   | 3. vase  | vest   |
| 4. vet  | wet | 5. violin | volcano | 6. water | winter |

2 Listen and write the words:

استمع واكتب الكلمات.

- |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. _____ | 2. _____ | 3. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 5. _____ | 6. _____ |
| 7. _____ | 8. _____ | 9. _____ |

3 Listen and write. Then listen again and check:

استمع واكتب. ثم استمع مرة أخرى وتأكد.

Last (1) I (2) to travel in my boat wearing my (3). I was looking for a (4) but I had some problems (5). I met some (6) and they turned (7) my boat. I had to sit on my (8) to stay afloat (9)! I ate (10) to stay healthy and I came to (11). I didn't find the (12), but I met some vets and they took me home to my (13)!



Arabic Meaning

- 1- قرر
- 2- مسكلات
- 3- فليوا
- 4- يدعى عاقما
- 5- النشاط

4 Listen and repeat the tongue twister. Can you say it quickly:

استمع وردد الكلمات أو الجمل التي تسبب تنافر أو تلثم اللسان. هل تستطيع أن تقولها بسرعة؟

- يقصد بـ (tongue twister) تنافر أو تلثم اللسان من أجل توضيح مدى السرعة التي يمكنك بها التحدث بمجموعة من الكلمات لها نفس الحروف والتي يصعب نطقها معاً في جملة واحدة.



Waleed made vases on very wet wheels for vets.

صنع وليد زهريات على عجلات مبللة للأطباء البيطريين.



# Activities



## 1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

1. My father lives in a .....
2. Yesterday, he ..... up early.
3. He put the cat in his .....
4. He gave it some ..... and food.

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- | A                             | B                            |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 My uncle goes up            | a on the violin.             |
| 2 Hisham likes playing        | b the best tomatoes in town. |
| 3 She is my favorite teacher, | c very tiring.               |
| 4 Mr Mahmoud plants           | d she's kind and friendly.   |
| 5 That long walk was          | e some very high mountains.  |
|                               | f really amazed.             |

## 3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

My grandfather could do many things when he was young. He went to the library once a week. He was a good reader. He read about 30 books every year. He could also climb very high mountains. He was a great traveler. He traveled to many places around the world. When I grow up, I want to be like my grandfather.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My grandfather could climb high .....  
 a places      b walls      c mountains      d trees
2. My grandfather read about ..... books every year.  
 a thirteen      b thirty      c sixty      d three

## B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did the grandfather go to the library?  
 .....
4. Where did the grandfather travel?  
 .....

## 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات للكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. got - home - relax - I - to.  
 .....
2. interested - I - history - very - in.  
 .....
3. four - the - has - wheels - car.  
 .....
4. makes - clear - What - everything - lessons - in?  
 .....
5. professional - my - climber - is - uncle - a.  
 .....
6. kind - your - friendly - teacher - I - and?  
 .....

## 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. mohamed Elneny is a famous egyptian footballer.  
 .....
2. do you like eating watermelons  
 .....



## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



unusual animal (حيوان غير مألوف (غريب)

nickname

اسم الشهرة / لقب / كناية

dugong

(الأطوم (بقرة البحر)

sea cow

بقرة البحر

sea bed

قاع البحر

(حيوان بحري كبير الحجم من فصيلة الثدييات)

infographic

مخطط معلومات بياني

## Other words



email

بريد إلكتروني

cute

جميل

basketball

كرة السلة

note

ملاحظة

habitat

بيئة الحيوان أو النبات

polar

قطبي

grassland

أرض عشبية

bison

ثور أمريكي

warm

دافئ

cool

بارد

percent

نسبة مئوية

surface

سطح

eagle

طائر العقاب

wolf

ذئب

## Writing an email

From + اسم المرسل

To + اسم المرسل إليه

١. عند كتابة الإيميل تبدأ بـ:

ثم تكتب:

٢. تبدأ الإيميل بكلمات (عزيزي Dear) أو (أهلاً Hi) ثم اسم المرسل إليه.

٣. ثم نقول لماذا تكتب الإيميل باستخدام عبارات مثل:

- Just a quick note مجرد ملحوظة سريعة

- Thanks for writing to me. شكراً للكتابة لي.

٤. أعطي فكرة عن الموضوع ثم توسع في شرحه.

٥. عندما تكتب لصديقك استخدم لغة غير رسمية مثل:

- awesome / cool. كلمات مثل:

- How's life? / How are things? عبارات مثل:

٦. اختتم الإيميل بعبارات مثل:

- Write soon. أكتب لي في أقرب وقت.

- Hope to hear from you soon. أتمنى أن أعرف أخبارك قريباً.

- See you soon. أراك قريباً.

- All the best. كل الأمنيات الطيبة.

- Bye for now. إلى اللقاء.

٧. ثم تكتب إسمك.

## Study the following

1 I play on a team once a week.

- ألع في الفريق مرة في الأسبوع.

2 My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong.

- الأطوم حيواني المفضل وغير المألوف في مصر.

3 It's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute.

- لديه وجه أليف ومحبوب وهو حيوان رائع جداً.

4 Its nickname is the sea cow.

- اسم الشهرة هو بقرة البحر.

5 It spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

- يقضي ساعات طويلة يأكل العشب من قاع البحر كل يوم.

## 1 Read Amir's email. What's his favorite unusual animal?

اقرأ إيميل أمير. ما الحيوان غير المألوف لديه؟

استمع إلى النص:



From: Amir

To: Tamer

Subject: Unusual animals

## New Message

Dear Tamer,

Thanks for your email. How are things? It was really interesting to hear about the sports you like. I love basketball, and I play on a team once a week.

This week we're talking a lot about unusual animals at school. We looked at animals from around the world and some from Egypt. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong - can you see the photo? I think it's got a lovely friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

What about you? What's your favorite unusual animal? Write back and let me know.

Hope to hear from you soon!

Amir



dugong



Read again and answer True (T) or False (F):

اقرأ النص السابق مرة أخرى وأجب بـ (True) أو (False).

1. Tamer called Amir and they talked about sports.

2. Amir doesn't like sports.

3. Amir wants to talk about wildlife.

4. He sends a photo to Tamer.

5. Amir says that dugongs are also called sea cows.

6. He wants Tamer to write back.

Complete the email phrases:

أكمل عبارات الإيميل:

things - note - best - soon

1. See you ..... !

2. How are ..... ?

3. Just a quick .....

4. All the .....

Work in pairs. Discuss and decide:

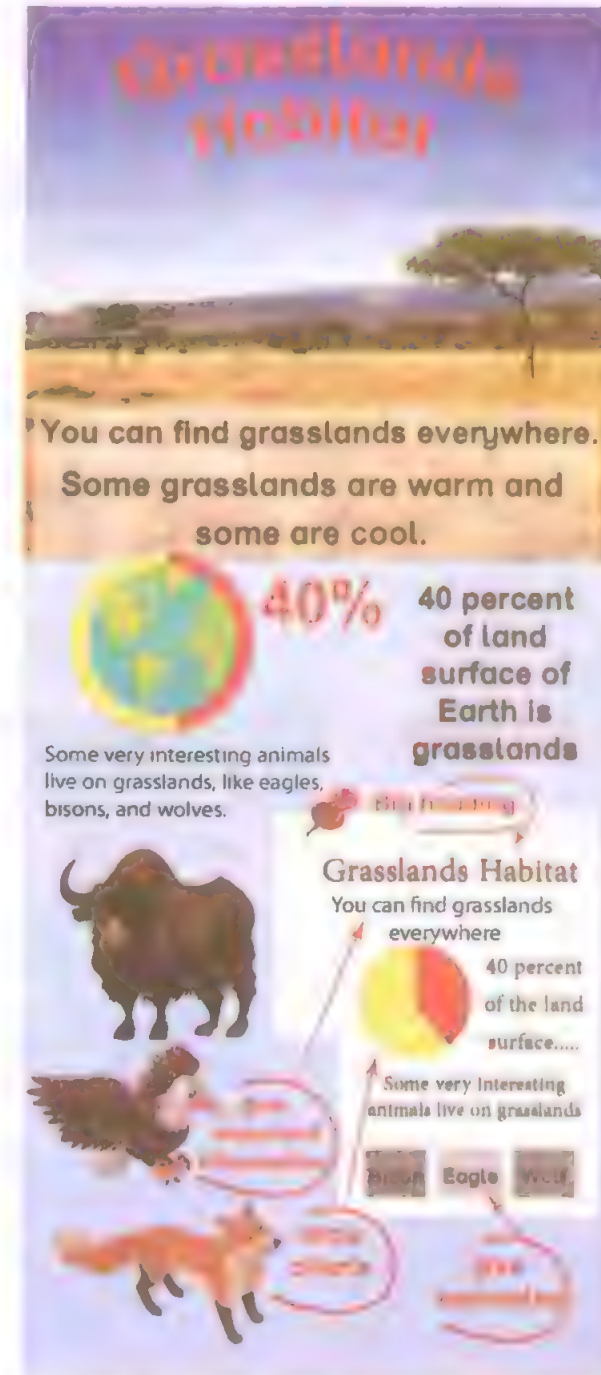
اعملوا في ثنائيات. تناقشوا وقرروا:

You are going to make an infographic about an animal habitat. First, look at the example of an infographic. Then choose a habitat for your infographic. Here are some ideas:

- ستقوم بعمل مخطط معلومات بياني. انظر للمثال القادم أولاً لمخطط المعلومات. ثم اختري بيئة لمخططك

إليك بعض الأفكار.

• desert • forest • polar • ocean





# Activities



## 1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

- Salma is watching a programme about ..... animals.
- Salma's favorite unusual animal is the .....
- The dugong lives in the .....
- Its nickname is the sea .....

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

- We're talking
- I play on
- Dugongs are called
- It's got a lovely
- Write back and

B

- the sea cows.
- friendly face.
- about unusual animals.
- a team once a week.
- let me know.
- from the sea bed.

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- you - photo - Can - the - see?
- email - your - Thanks - for.
- nickname - the sea - Its - cow - is.
- eats - the sea - The dugong - bed - grass - from.

## 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- does amir like sports. ....
- we looked at animals from Egypt .....

# Review



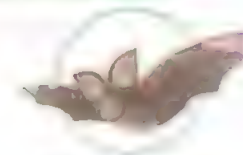
## Animals الحيوانات



kangaroo حيوان الكنغر



panda الباندا



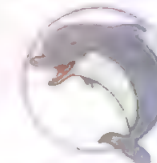
bat خفاش



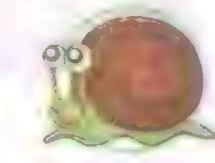
lion اسد



penguin بطريق



dolphin دولفين



snail حلزون



parrot ببغاء

## Jobs in Ancient Egypt وظائف في مصر القديمة



soldier جندي



pharaoh فرعون



scribe كاتب



artisan نحّات / رسّام



farmer فلاح

## The water cycle دورة الماء



clouds سحب



the sun الشمس



river نهر



groundwater مياه جوفية



evaporation التبخر



precipitation الهطول



stream جدول مائي

## USEFUL WORDS



## USEFUL PHRASES

use a computer  
play chess  
wide  
famous  
shelter  
rest  
comfortable  
save  
dugong

يستخدم كمبيوتر  
يلعب الشطرنج  
واسع - عريض  
مشهور  
ماوى  
يستريح  
مريح  
ينقذ  
الأطوم

busy  
German  
shade  
traders  
meeting point  
breeze  
useless  
ungrateful  
sea cow

مشغول  
اللغة الألمانية  
ظل  
تجار  
مكار للتجمع  
نسيم (رياح خفيف)  
بلا فائدة  
ناكر الجميل  
بقرة البحر





## Pronunciation

Ww

Vv

- لاحظ نطق حرفي (Vv) / (Ww) من الأصوات التي تهتز فيها الأحبال الصوتية (voiced sound) حيث تضع يديك على الحنجرة وتشعر باهتزاز عند نطقهم.

/Ww/

/Vv/



inter

الشتاء



wheel

(إطار سيارة)



whale

حوت



watermelon

بمليخة



vet

طبيب بيطري



violin

آلة الكمان



volcano

بركان



vase

زهريّة

## Language Focus

## ملاحظات لغوية

فعل في المصدر + يستطيع أن can + فاعل

- Birds can fly.

في النفي نستخدم:

فعل في المصدر + لا يستطيع أن can't + فاعل

- Pandas can't drive a car.

في السؤال نستخدم: هل في المصدر + Inf + فاعل + Can?

- Can you play tennis?

لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد can / can't

فعل في المصدر + could + Inf + فاعل

- I could run fast last year.

في النفي:

فعل في المصدر + couldn't + inf + فاعل

- I couldn't take the bus so I had to walk.

في السؤال: هل في المصدر + Inf + فاعل + Could?

- Could you play the piano last year?

لاحظ لا نضع (to) بعد could / couldn't

فعل في المصدر + استطاع could + فاعل + جملة في زمن الماضي البسيط + عندما When  
لم يستطع couldn't

- When I was five, I could speak English.

- When she was a baby, she couldn't walk.

1

للتعبير عن:  
استطاعة فعل  
شيء في الحاضر  
نستخدم:

2

للتعبير عن:  
استطاعة فعل  
شيء في الماضي  
نستخدم:

## Writing Skills

## مهارات الكتابة

Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words

## Answers to Paragraphs

## Paragraph 1

## Things you could do when you were little

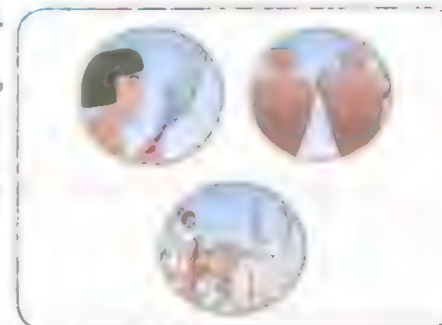
- 1 When I was little, I could do many things, but there were things I couldn't do. I could ride a bike at five. I couldn't walk when I was two. My mother helped me to do a lot of things.



## Paragraph 2

## Jobs in Ancient Egypt

- 2 There were many jobs in Ancient Egyptian society. People played important roles. For example, farmers grew many crops. Artisans made good things for people to use like furniture, chariots and clothes. Soldiers kept Egypt safe and guarded the kingdom.



## Activity 3 - Unit 9

## The bats

- 3 Bats fly at night. They are all hiding. We can't see them in the dark. They sleep upside down on trees. They are black. I don't like them. But my teacher wants me to do a project about them.





## A- Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختار:

1. I like .....

(animals - birds - insects)

2. I say some words for it to .....

(sing - think - repeat)

## B- Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

animals - go - park

A : Where did you ..... last weekend?

B : I went to the new wildlife .....

What did you see?

B : I saw some unusual .....

## C- Reading Comprehension

3 Read and choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

This week we're talking about unusual animals at school. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the dugong. It's got lovely friendly face and it's very cute. Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

Choose the correct answer:

1. This week we're talking about ..... animals. (usual - unusual - cute)

2. We're talking about unusual animals at ..... (house - park - school)

3. My favorite unusual animal from Egypt is the ..... (elephant - dugong - lion)

4. Its nickname is the sea ..... (fish - whale - cow)

5. It spends many hours eating ..... from the sea bed every day. (meat - rice - grass)

## D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. I ..... speak French when I lived in France.

a can

b can't

c could

2. Rain falls from clouds in the .....

a moon

b sky

c earth

3. My favorite ..... is Miss Fatma. She is kind in the classroom.

a vet

b doctor

c teacher

4. Sorry, I ..... help you with your homework. I'm busy.

a can

b can't

c could

5. It's important to ..... lots of trees.

a sleep

b meet

c plant

## E- The Reader

5 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Grandma is so excited to see her .....

a son

b grandparents

c grandchildren

2. They are wearing hats, scarves, and .....

a boots

b shirts

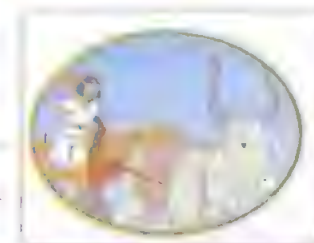
c sunglasses

## F- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من 4 جمل عن:

Farmed in Ancient Egypt





## 9 Activity



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

	True	False
1 Penguins lives in the river.		
2 Penguins are cute and friendly.		
3 A penguin swims in a group of family.		
4 The English teacher was happy about the project.		

2 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

1. There were many ..... in the Ancient Egyptian society.
2. Tarek would like to be a .....
3. Soldiers guarded the .....
4. Soldiers kept Ancient Egyptians .....

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 When something is useless,	a. many green branches.
2 I'm black and white.	b. their mom's pouch.
3 Could you speak English	c. ungrateful to the tree.
4 Little kangaroos sit inside	d. when you were five?
5 The tree has	e. I'm a penguin.
	f. we can't use it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Water is the secret of life on planet Earth. Water is two-thirds of the planet, but land is only a third of the planet. It comes from lakes, oceans, rivers and rains. It's a renewable resource. We use water when we wake up in the morning until we sleep at night. We should drink much water every day to keep healthy.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة. Help your child deal with such questions.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We should drink water to keep .....  
a unhealthy b tired c bad d healthy
2. The land is ..... of the planet.  
a a third b two-thirds c a quarter d a half

B. Answer the following questions:

3. How much water is on planet Earth?

4. Where does water come from?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. feed - my - I've - rabbit - got - to.

2. plant - I - trees - it - important - to?

3. swim - Could - year - Hany - last?

4. jump - can - Kangaroos - high - very.

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. could you read when you were a child

2. we can't see or smell the water vapor

7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

The bats

مجاوب آخر الوحدة 3

- 1- When do bats fly?
- 2- How do bats sleep?





## 1 Listen and point:

استمع وأشر:

Tapescript



نص الاستماع

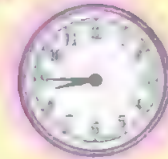
استمع إلى المفردات

- 1- clock
- 2- cough
- 3- bat
- 4- closet
- 5- dolphin

- 6- kangaroo
- 7- headache
- 8- balcony
- 9- lion
- 10- shoulder

- 11- shower
- 12- panda
- 14- oven
- 15- toothache
- 16- parrot

Start



1- clock



2-



3-



4-



5-



10-



9-



8-



7-



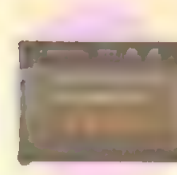
6-



11-



12-



13-



14-



15-

Finish

## Review

## 3

## Objectives of Review 3

أهداف المراجعة

## Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 7 - 9.

- يراجع الطالب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ٧ إلى ٩.

## Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 7 - 9.

- يراجع الطالب الصوتيات من الوحدات ٧ إلى ٩.

- To evaluate progress in Units 7 - 9.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح الطالب في استيعاب الوحدات من ٧ إلى ٩.

- To learn about the society.

- يتعلم الطالب عن المجتمع.

- To read a non-fiction text and answer questions.

- يقرأ الطالب نص به معلومات حقيقية ويحجب عن الأسئلة.

- To identify keywords from the story.

- يتعرف الطالب على الكلمات الأساسية في القصة.



## 2 Look and write:

أنظر واكتب (كالمثال):

- اكتب جمل عن الصور السابقة في Ex.1:

## 3 Play and say:

العب وقل:

What's  
number 12?It's a panda.  
What's  
number 15?

## 4 Complete the sentences using the words in the box:

أكمل الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات في القائمة:

unhappy - unsafe - uncomfortable - unfriendly

1. I'm glad Mom and Dad didn't buy that couch - it was really uncomfortable.
2. She's very \_\_\_\_\_ because she lost her homework.
3. We all thought the new girl was \_\_\_\_\_, but actually she just didn't talk much.
4. That electrical wire looks very \_\_\_\_\_ - don't touch it!

## 5 Complete the text about Injy's day in Alexandria with the verbs in the regular and irregular past simple form:

أكمل الجمل عن يوم إنجي في الإسكندرية باستخدام الأفعال المنتظمة وغير المنتظمة في زمن الماضي البسيط:

I had (have) a lovely day yesterday.I went (travel) to Alexandria with mymom to see my aunt. We went (go) by train. I love trains!When we arrived (arrive), we rushed (rush) straight to my aunt's house.She gave (give) us a delicious lunch. After lunch, my aunt took (take)us to the Corniche. The sea was (be) really beautiful.

## 6 Complete the sentences about the rest of Injy's day in Exercise 5. Check (✓) the sentences with irregular verbs:

أكمل الجمل عن باقي يوم إنجي في التمرين ٥. ضع علامة صح أمام الجمل التي تحتوي على أفعال غير منتظمة:

- 1- We drank (drink) juice at a café in the square. (✓)
- 2- Then we drove (drive) to the market and bought (buy) a present for a friend. ( )
- 3- We had (have) a great time. ( )
- 4- I nearly missed (miss) the train home! ( )
- 5- I slept (sleep) all the way back home. ( )

## 1 Label the photos with the words in the box:

ضع الكلمة المناسبة من القائمة تحت الصورة الخاصة بها:

backache - cough - earache - headache - sore throat - toothache

1



headache

2



3



4



5



6



## 2 Put the dialog in the correct order. Listen, check, and repeat. Then act it out in pairs:

رتب المحادثة. استمع وتأكد وكرر ثم قم بالادوار في ثنائيات:

Nurse : Come in, Kareem. What's the matter?

Kareem : Thank you, nurse.

Nurse : Oh dear. Did you hit your ear with a ball?

Kareem : I have an earache.

Nurse : Let me see. Yes, it is red inside. I think you should go home. I'll telephone your mom.

Kareem : No, I had an earache when I woke up this morning.



- 3 Listen then write the words you hear. Then match the words and pictures:

استمع ثم اكتب الكلمات التي تسميها. ثم صل الكلمات بالصور:



1- .....panda.....

2- p.....



3- d.....

4- r.....

5- s.....

6- w.....



1

- 4 Complete the sentences with could or couldn't:

أكمل الجمل باستخدام could أو couldn't:

- I ..... speak when I was one month old.
- I ..... ride a bike when I was a baby.
- Waleed ..... read when he was 6. He loves reading!
- Amira ..... write until she went to school.
- Tamer's brother ..... drive at 20 - he passed his driving test at 18.
- I ..... play a guitar at seven. My dad taught me.

- 5 Complete the crossword with the -er words:

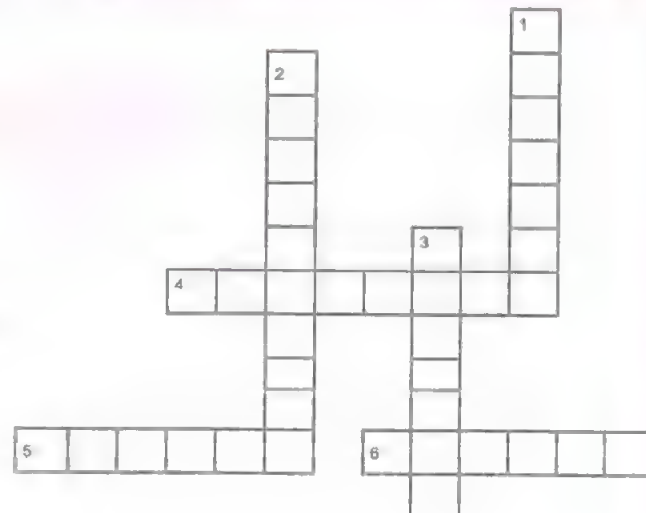
أكمل الكلمات المتقاطعة باستخدام كلمات تنتهي بـ -er:

Down

- Someone who helps you in the classroom.
- Someone who plays a famous sport with a ball.
- Someone who goes up mountains using a rope.

Across

- Someone who travels to a lot of places.
- Someone who grows food for us.
- Someone who reads a lot.



## Non-Fiction

### Are there endangered animals in Egypt?

#### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



Egyptian tortoise

السحفاة المصرية



Dorcas gazelle

غزال دوركاس (غزال الأريل)

extinct

منقرض

habitat

موطن (مسكن طبيعي)

endangered

مهدد بالانقراض

poaching

الصيد الجائر

herbivores

نباتي (أكل للأعشاب)

#### Other words



no longer

لم يعد

several

عديد

reason

سبب

including

مشملاً / بما في ذلك

loss

خسارة / فقدان

pollution

التلوث

responsibility

مسؤولية

actions

أفعال

species

فصيلة / فصائل

population

تعداد السكان

up to

يصل إلى

length

طول

weight

وزن

top speed

أقصى سرعة

km per hour

كيلومتر في الساعة

diet

غذاء

Sahara

الصحراء الكبرى

meat

لحم

skin

جلد حي

farming

الزراعة

kilogram

كيلوجرام



### Definition

**extinct (adj)** مفرص if something is extinct it no longer exists

**habitat (n)** موطن (مسكن طبيعي) the place where an animal or plant lives

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Present

#### Past

exist يوجد  
live يعيش  
protect يحمي  
share يشارك  
destroy يدمر  
hunt يصطاد

existed  
lived  
protected  
shared  
destroyed  
hunted

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present

#### Past

mean يعني  
become يصبح  
hurt يؤذي  
keep يحفظ  
sell يبيع

meant  
became  
hurt  
kept  
sold

### Study the following

- Some animals are endangered. بعض الحيوانات مهددة بالانقراض.
- The Egyptian tortoise is one of the smallest tortoises in the world. السلحفاة المصرية واحدة من أصغر السلحفاة في العالم.
- It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and Libya. تعيش (السلحفاة المصرية) في المناطق الصحراوية في مصر وليبيا.
- They are herbivores. They only eat leaves and plants. هم نباتيون، يأكلون فقط أوراق النبات والنباتات.
- People hunt the Dorcas gazelle for its meat and skin. يصطاد الناس غزال دوركاس من أجل لحمه وجلده.

### 1 Work with a partner. Ask and answer

إعمل مع زميلك. إسأل وأجب.

- Is it important to protect wild animals? Why? / Why not?

### 2 Read and listen to the article about endangered animals:

اقرأ واستمع للمقال عن الحيوانات المهددة بالانقراض.

استمع إلى النص



### Tapescript

### نص الاستماع

If an animal is **endangered** <sup>(1)</sup>, it means that it could become **extinct** <sup>(2)</sup>. Animals can become endangered for **several reasons** <sup>(3)</sup> including **loss** <sup>(4)</sup> of **habitat** <sup>(5)</sup>, **pollution** <sup>(6)</sup>, and **overhunting** <sup>(7)</sup>. It's our **responsibility** <sup>(8)</sup> to protect all wild animals because we share the Earth with them! Our **government** <sup>(9)</sup> shouldn't **ignore** <sup>(10)</sup> wild animals or their habitats. In Egypt, around 70 **percent** <sup>(11)</sup> of animals are endangered. Let's look at two of them:

- 1- مهدد بالانقراض
- 2- مفرص
- 3- أسباب عديدة
- 4- فقدان
- 5- موطن
- 6- التلوث
- 7- الإفراط في الصيد
- 8- مسؤولية
- 9- اوعال
- 10- يتجاهل
- 11- نسبة
- 12- تعداد السكان
- 13- الطول
- 14- الوزن
- 15- أقصى سرعة
- 16- الغذاء



Egyptian tortoise



Dorcas gazelle

Facts	Facts
Population <sup>(12)</sup> : 7, 470	Population : 1,000-2,000
Can live up to : 50 years	Can live up to : 15 years
Length <sup>(13)</sup> : 14.4 cm	Length : 90- 100 cm
Weight <sup>(14)</sup> : 160- 350 g	Weight : 15- 20 kg
Top speed <sup>(15)</sup> : up to 8 kms per hour	Top speed : up to 96 kms per hour
Diet <sup>(16)</sup> : plants and leaves	Diet : plants and leaves



The **Egyptian tortoise**<sup>(17)</sup> is one of the smallest tortoises in the world. It lives in the desert areas of Egypt and Libya.

However, the Egyptian tortoise is now endangered. This is because its habitat has been **destroyed**<sup>(18)</sup>, but also because people take them from the wild to keep as pets. **Dorcas**

**gazelles**<sup>(19)</sup> live in the **Sahara**<sup>(20)</sup> and **Negev deserts**<sup>(21)</sup>. They are **herbivores**<sup>(22)</sup> - this means they only eat leaves and plants.

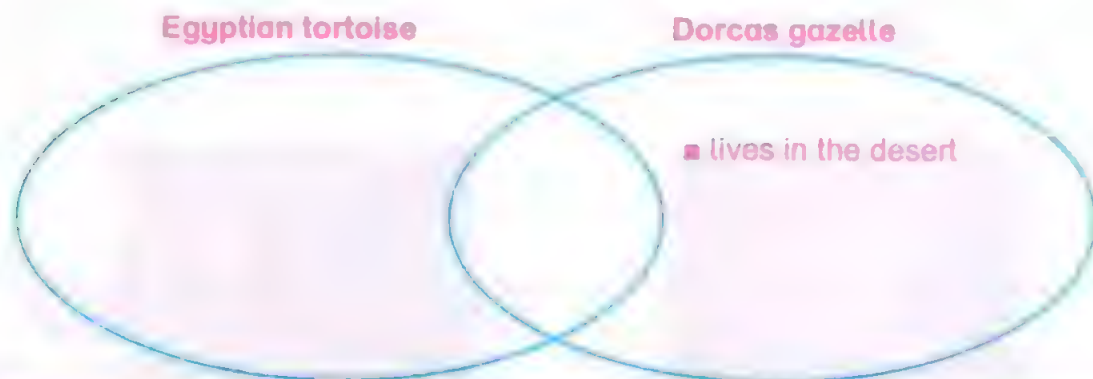
Dorcas gazelles are nearly extinct for two main reasons: firstly, people hunt them for their meat and skin. Secondly, more and more people are using their habitat for **farming**<sup>(23)</sup> and building.

1 Read again. Write the information in the correct part of the diagram:

اقرأ مرة أخرى. أكتب المعلومات في المكان الصحيح بالشكل.

- more than 5,000
- lives in the desert
- only eats plants and leaves

- can run nearly 100 kms per hour
- lives up to 15 years
- people keep them as pets



2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box: أكمل الجمل بالكلمات من القائمة:

extinct - habitat - kilograms - kilometers - meat - wild

1. People take tortoises from the \_\_\_\_\_ and sell them as pets.
2. The Egyptian tortoise can travel at about eight \_\_\_\_\_ per hour.
3. People hunt the Dorcas gazelle for its \_\_\_\_\_ and skin.
4. The Dorcas gazelle weighs between 15 and 20 \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Both the Egyptian tortoise and the Dorcas gazelle are nearly \_\_\_\_\_.
6. People are destroying the \_\_\_\_\_ of the Dorcas gazelle and the Egyptian tortoise.



## Activity

on Units  
(7, 8 & 9)

### A- Listening

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

- 1 Dina lives in Cairo. ☐
- 2 Her parents had to move to a new job. ☐
- 3 The new apartment is smaller. ☐
- 4 The kitchen is bigger. ☐

2 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

1. The two friends went to the \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
2. Omar hurt his \_\_\_\_\_.
3. His \_\_\_\_\_ took him to see the doctor.
4. He had to stay at home for a \_\_\_\_\_.

### B- Reading

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

- 1 Snails
- 2 I couldn't take the bus
- 3 Where do
- 4 What's
- 5 She didn't

- a you live?
- b eat her dinner.
- c eats her dinner.
- d so I had to walk.
- e the matter?
- f can live in shells.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My sister Dina is pupil in primary five. She likes helping **patients**. She wants to be a nurse when she grows up. On the summer holiday, she goes to the hospital near her house. The doctors and nurses like her. They teach her how to change bandages and give injections. She buys books about medicine, too.



## Review

3

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Dina wants to be a ..... when she grows up.  
☐ a vet      ☐ b doctor      ☐ c nurse      ☐ d patient
- The underlined word "patients" means ..... people.  
☐ a sick      ☐ b healthy      ☐ c helpful      ☐ d useful

### B. Answer the following questions.

3. What does Dina learn from doctors and nurses?

4. Where does Dina go on the summer holiday?

### 5. Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- sore - a - I - throat - have. ....
- new - the - Dina - apartment - likes. ....
- important - food - eat - to - healthy - it is. ....
- lions - very - Can - fast - run? ....

### 6. Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- do you like vegetables .....
- I didn t arrive on time .....

### 7. Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

'Your favorite animal'

- What's your favorite animal?
- What color is the panda?



Theme

2

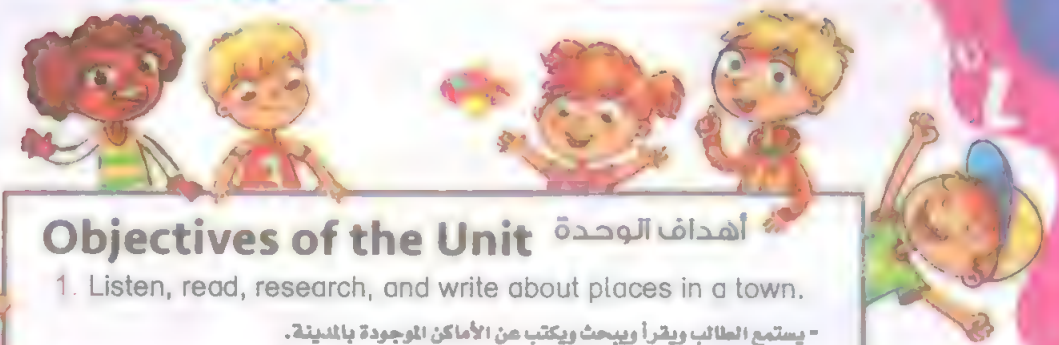
# Being responsible

Unit

10

## Let's visit Egypt

هيا لزيارة مصر



### Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

- Listen, read, research, and write about places in a town.  
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الأماكن الموجودة بالمدينة.
- Practice using the imperative to tell someone to do or not to do something.  
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام صيغة الأمر لإخبار شخص ما بفعل شيء ما أو عدم فعله.
- Practice using questions and short answers.  
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام صيغة الأسئلة والإجابات القصيرة.
- Read and say words with diphthongs.  
- يقرأ الطالب ويقول الكلمات التي تحتوي على اذغام.
- Estimate with mental math.  
- يقوم الطالب بالتقدير باستخدام الرياضيات الذهنية.
- Write a paragraph about my town.  
- يكتب الطالب فقرة إنشائية عن مدينته.
- Make a poster about my perfect town.  
- يصنع الطالب ملصقاً عن مدينته المثالية.





# We Love Alexandria!

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



بنك bank



مصنع factory



نُصب تذكاري / أثر monument



مكتبة library



مول تجاري shopping mall

## Places

## الأماكن



ميدان square



محطة station



متحف museum



سوق market



شاطئ beach



سوبر ماركت supermarket



فندق hotel



مطعم restaurant

mint tea  
local cuisine  
spend ages

شاي بالنعناع  
ماكولات / أطباق محلية  
يقضي الكثير من الوقت

originally  
on vacation

في الأصل  
في إجازة

## Countries and Cities



Countries	دول	Cities & towns	مدن كبيرة وصغيرة
Egypt	مصر	Alexandria	الإسكندرية
England	إنجلترا	Fayoum	الفيوم
Germany	ألمانيا	Cairo	القاهرة
		Barcelona	برشلونة

جميع أسماء الدول والمدن تبدأ بحرف capital.

## Other words



stores	متاجر محلات	ingredients	مكونات الطعام
tourist	سائح	friendly	ودود
roof garden	حديقة فوق السطح	the Pyramids	الأهرامات
chatting	دردشة	school trip	رحلة مدرسية
relaxing	مريح	traditional food	طعام تقليدي
amazing	رائع	fresh	طازج
excellent	ممتاز	modern buildings	مباني حديثة
culture	حضارة ثقافة	traditions	تقاليد
yet	حتى الآن	shopping	التسوق
sweet	حلو المذاق	swimming	السباحة
exciting	مثير رائع	mix of	مزيج / خليط من

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

### أفعال منتظمة

#### Present

serve	يقدم طعام
remind	يُذكّر
own	يملك

#### Past

served
reminded
owned

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present

think	يعتقد
go	يذهب
find out	يكتشف
see	يري

#### Past

thought
went
found out
saw



## Study the following

- 1 Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. الإسكندرية مكان مثير حقًا للزيارة.
- 2 There's a lot to see and do here! هناك الكثير لرؤيته والقيام به هنا!
- 3 I love just sitting in the roof garden of my hotel. أحب الجلوس في الحديقة التي على سطح الفندق.
- 4 I love drinking sweet Egyptian mint tea and chatting to other people. أحب شرب الشاي المصري بالنعناع الحلو والمذاق والدردشة مع الآخرين.
- 5 I've lived in Alexandria all my life. لقد عشت في الإسكندرية طوال حياتي.
- 6 You must visit my restaurant to try some of the local cuisine. يجب أن تزور مطعمي لتتذوق بعض الطعام المحلي.
- 7 We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. نقدم الطعام المصري التقليدي باستخدام مكونات محلية طازجة لذيذة.
- 8 I prefer to buy my ingredients at the market. أفضل شراء مكونات طعامي من السوق.
- 9 We spend ages walking around them. نقضي الكثير من الوقت في التجول حولهم.
- 10 I'm Egyptian, originally from Cairo. أنا مصري، في الأصل من القاهرة.
- 11 My favorite place is the beach. المكان المفضل لدي هو الشاطئ.
- 12 I'm on vacation here from Barcelona. أنا في إجازة هنا قادمًا من برشلونة.
- 13 I love the mix of modern and old buildings. أحب المزيج بين المباني الحديثة والقديمة.
- 14 I like to find out about the culture and traditions. أحب التعرف على الثقافة والتقاليد.
- 15 There's a really big station in my town. هناك بالفعل محطة كبيرة في بلدي.

1 Listen and read: Who is from Alexandria? استمع واقرأ. من مدينته الإسكندرية؟

## Tapescript

## نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص



## Why we love Alexandria!

Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. There's even a beach! We asked some people who live there and tourists what they think ...

**Jens:** I'm visiting Alexandria from Germany. I think it's really cool here. I think there are some good museums, but I haven't been to any **yet** <sup>(1)</sup>. I love just sitting in the **roof garden** <sup>(2)</sup> of my hotel, drinking sweet Egyptian **mint tea** <sup>(3)</sup> and chatting to other people. It's very **relaxing** <sup>(4)</sup>.

## Meaning

- ١- حتى الآن
- ٢- الحديقة فوق السطح
- ٣- شاي بالنعناع
- ٤- مريح

## Lesson 1

**Hanan:** I've lived in Alexandria all my life. I own a restaurant here so I have to say that you must visit my restaurant to try some of the **local cuisine** <sup>(5)</sup>. We serve traditional Egyptian food using lovely fresh local ingredients. We have **excellent** <sup>(6)</sup> supermarkets, but I prefer to buy my **ingredients** <sup>(7)</sup> at the market in the old town.

**Kira and Lena:** We're from a small town in England. The **stores** <sup>(8)</sup> aren't very good there. That's what we love most about Alexandria—the shopping malls! We **spend ages** <sup>(9)</sup> walking around them. We like the people. They are so **friendly** <sup>(10)</sup>!

**Karim:** I'm Egyptian, **originally** <sup>(11)</sup> from Cairo. I moved to Alexandria last year and I love it here. I work in a bank. My favorite place is the beach—there isn't one in Cairo! It can get very hot here in **summer** <sup>(12)</sup>, so it's great to go there and swim.

**Paulo:** I'm on **vacation** <sup>(13)</sup> here from **Barcelona** <sup>(14)</sup>. I like Alexandria because it reminds me of home—a big, modern city near the sea. I love the mix of modern and old **buildings** <sup>(15)</sup>. Also, I like to find out about the **culture** <sup>(16)</sup> and **traditions** <sup>(17)</sup>. The library is amazing!

- أكلات محلية

٧- مكونات الطعام

٨- متاجر

٩- يقضي وقت كثير

١٠- ودود

١١- أصلاً / في الأصل

١٢- الصيف

١٣- عطلة

١٤- برشلونة

١٥- مباني

١٦- ثقافة / حضارة

١٧- تقاليد

## 2 Listen again. Circle the correct word:

استمع مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Jens likes drinking tea in the museum / **hotel**.
- 2 Hanan buys her ingredients from the supermarket / **market**.
- 3 Kira and Lena like **shopping** / swimming in Alexandria.
- 4 Karim lives in **Cairo** / Alexandria.
- 5 Paulo likes Alexandria because it is like **Cairo** / Barcelona.

## 3 Listen and repeat. Then look and write:

استمع وردد. ثم انظر واكتب:

station - factory - library - monument - bank - square - shopping mall



1



2



3



4



5



6



7



Listen and match the places and people:

استمع وصل الأماكن بالأشخاص:

library - monument - factory - station



Look at the places in Exercise 3. Which of the places are in your town? Talk to a partner:

انظر إلى الصور في تمرين ٣ أي من الأماكن موجودة في مدينتك؟ تكلم مع زميلك.



There's a really big station on my town.

That's right. There's also a library.



Did you know? هل تعلم؟

Fayoum is the oldest town in Egypt. Archaeologists think it is more than 7,000 years old.

تعد الفيوم أقدم مدينة في مصر. يعتقد علماء الآثار أن عمرها أكثر من ٧٠٠٠ عام.

# Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1 Every year, I go to Alexandria with my friends.

2 Alexandria is a very big city.

3 We always stay in a house near the beach.

4 We always have lunch at a big restaurant.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

1 Fayoum is the

2 I love sitting in the roof

3 Sara went to the station

4 I own a restaurant and

5 My favorite place is a beach

a and traveled by train.

b. so, I go to Alexandria every year.

c garden of my hotel.

d. I serve traditional Egyptian food.

e. oldest town in Egypt.

f. we will go to the shopping mall.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. a really - place - exciting - Alexandria - to visit - is.

2. is - favorite - the - My - place - beach.

3. is - Who - Alexandria - from?

4. in - from - town - Wary - England - a small.



5. the supermarket - from - from - buys - the - ingredients.

6. Volunteer - like - and Hala - in - swimming - Alexandria.

7. to - buy - wants - books - some - borrow.

#### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. where do you come from

2. i have lived in alexandria all my life.

#### 5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

#### A visit to Alexandria

exciting place to visit - favorite place is the beach



### LESSON

## 2

### Let's Find Out!

#### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:

evidence دليل / أدلة  
monuments آثار  
paintings نقوش / رسوم منقوشة

artifacts نُحف / مصنوعات بدوية أثرية  
hieroglyphics اللغة الهيروغليفية  
tombs مقابر

Ancient Egypt مصر القديمة  
buildings مباني  
clearly بوضوح  
daily life الحياة اليومية  
facts حقائق  
feasts أعياد  
important people شخصيات هامة  
information معلومات  
objects أشياء ممتلكات  
papyrus ورق البردي

signs علامات / إشارات  
special events / occasions أحداث / مناسبات خاصة  
scenes مشاهد  
structures مباني  
true حقيقي  
vase زهرية / فازة  
walls جدران  
water carriers سقايات (اواني حفظ المياه)  
writing symbols رموز الكتابة

#### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

exist يوجد  
celebrate يحتفل  
bury يدفن

#### Past ماضي

existed  
celebrated  
buried

#### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

knew يعرف  
learn يتعلم  
build يبني  
make يصنع  
teach يعلم

#### Past ماضي

knew  
learnt / learned  
built  
made  
taught



**artifact** تُحف objects like vases and pots which were made in the past

**evidence** أدلة / دليل facts that show something is true

**hieroglyphics** اللغة الهيروغليفية a kind of writing using pictures and symbols

**monument** آثار a building or statue

**painting** رسمة ملونه a picture

**tomb** مقبرة people were buried here when they died

### Study the following

#### 1 How do we know so much about life in Ancient Egypt?

كيف نعرف الكثير عن الحياة في مصر القديمة؟

#### 2 Have you seen any of these things?

هل رأيت أيًا من هذه الأشياء؟

#### 3 What are hieroglyphics?

ما هي اللغة الهيروغليفية؟

#### 4 They are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures.

هي عبارة عن رموز وصور الكتابة المصرية القديمة.

#### 5 Monuments teach us about buildings in Ancient Egypt.

تعلمنا الآثار عن المباني في مصر القديمة.

#### 6 Monuments were built to celebrate important people.

تم بناء النصب التذكارية (الآثار) للاحتفال بالأشخاص المهمين.

#### 7 Artifacts can give us information about how people lived.

يمكن أن تعطينا المصنوعات اليدوية (الأثرية) معلومات حول كيفية معيشة الناس.

#### 8 Paintings often show scenes of daily life or special occasions.

غالبًا ما تُظهر الرسوم المتحركة مشاهد من الحياة اليومية أو المناسبات الخاصة.

#### 9 Pharaohs were buried in tombs.

تم دفن الفراعنة في مقابر.

### 1 Look, listen and read. Have you seen any of these things?

#### Tapescript

#### لص الاستماع

#### استمع إلى النص

#### How do we know so much about life in Ancient Egypt?

There is lots of **evidence** <sup>(1)</sup> that tells us about life in **Ancient Egypt** <sup>(2)</sup>. Evidence is **facts** <sup>(3)</sup> or **signs** <sup>(4)</sup> that show **clearly** <sup>(5)</sup> that something **exists** <sup>(6)</sup> or is true.

We can learn about buildings from ancient **monuments** <sup>(7)</sup>. These are structures that were built to celebrate **important people** <sup>(8)</sup>.



**Artifacts** <sup>(9)</sup> are things from daily life like **vases** <sup>(10)</sup> and **water carriers** <sup>(11)</sup> that tell us how people lived.



**Paintings** <sup>(12)</sup> are on walls or on papyrus. They show **scenes** <sup>(13)</sup> of daily life, such as farmers working in the **fields** <sup>(14)</sup>, or **special occasions** <sup>(15)</sup>, such as **feasts** <sup>(16)</sup> and **special events** <sup>(17)</sup>.



**Hieroglyphics** <sup>(18)</sup> are Ancient Egyptian writing **symbols** <sup>(19)</sup> and pictures. From hieroglyphics we can get evidence about life in Ancient Egypt.



**Pharaohs** <sup>(20)</sup> and other important people were buried in beautiful **tombs** <sup>(21)</sup>. These also had other things people thought they might need and information about their life.



#### Arabic Meaning

- 1- دليل
- 2- مصر القديمة
- 3- حقائق
- 4- علامات
- 5- بوضوح
- 6- يوجد
- 7- معالم
- 8- أشخاص مهمين
- 9- أشياء
- 10- زجاجات
- 11- حوامل ماء
- 12- لوحات
- 13- مشاهد
- 14- حقول
- 15- مناسبات خاصة
- 16- عشاءات
- 17- أحداث خاصة
- 18- الهيروغليفية
- 19- رموز
- 20- الفراعنة
- 21- المقابر



# Look at the words and match them to their meanings:

انظر إلى الكلمات وصلها مع معانيها:

<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <b>A</b>  1 evidence  2 monument  3 painting  4 artifact  5 tomb  6 hieroglyphics </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <b>B</b>  a. a building or statue  b. facts that show something is true  c. a kind of writing using pictures and symbols  d. people were buried here when they died  e. objects like vases and pots which were made in the past  f. a picture </div>
---	---

# Complete the sentences:

اكمل الجمل:

- Monuments teach us about ..... in Ancient Egypt.
- Monuments were built to ..... important people.
- Artifacts can give us information about .....
- Paintings often show ..... or .....
- ..... were buried in tombs.
- Hieroglyphics are ..... and .....

# Ask and answer questions about the text in Exercise 1:

اسأل وأجب عن أسئلة حول النص في التمرين ١:

What are hieroglyphics?

They are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures.



# Activities

## Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

- Hieroglyphics are Ancient Egyptian writing .....
- Monuments teach us about ..... in Ancient Egypt.
- Monuments were built to ..... important people.
- Pharaohs were buried in .....

## Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <b>A</b><br/> 1 Evidence<br/> 2 Paintings show<br/> 3 Artifacts are like<br/> 4 Monuments were built<br/> 5 Hieroglyphics are Egyptian </div> | <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <b>B</b><br/> a to celebrate important people.<br/> b vases and pots.<br/> c writing symbols and pictures.<br/> d scenes of daily life.<br/> e is a building or statue.<br/> f facts that show something is true </div> |
|--|--|

## Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

The people in Ancient Egypt were skillful. They made many artifacts, like vases and water carriers. They drew paintings on the walls of temples or on papyrus. They built beautiful tombs for pharaohs and other important people. They built monuments to celebrate important people. They used hieroglyphics, which is a kind of writing using pictures and symbols.

## A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The people in Ancient Egypt were .....  
☐ a bad      ☐ b beautiful      ☐ c skillful      ☐ d true
- They made ....., like vases and water carriers.  
☐ a writing      ☐ b monuments      ☐ c tombs      ☐ d artifacts

## B- Answer the following questions:

- Why did they build monuments? .....
- What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to? .....



# 4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. any - of - you - Have - seen - these things?

2. beautiful - in - buried - Pharaohs - were - tombs.

3. in - about life - we - How - Ancient Egypt - do - know?

4. celebrate - to - These structures - were - important people - built.

5. from - are - daily - things - Artifacts - life.

# 5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what are hieroglyphics

2. monuments teach us about buildings in Ancient Egypt

# Don't Run In The Library!

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



environment  
trash

البيئة  
قمامة

flower  
trash can

زهرة  
صندوق قمامة

## Other words



Alexandria Library

مكتبة الإسكندرية

moment

لحظة

everybody

الجميع

quietly

بهدوء

upstairs

الطابق العلوي

elevator

مصعد

button

زر

loudly

بصوت عالي

shelf

رف

jacket

جاكت

swimming shorts

شورت السباحة

voice

صوت بشري

librarian

أمير المكتبة

tomorrow

غداً

unkind

غير لطيف

lesson

حصة درس

password

كلمة السر

clean

نظيف

## Instructions



Wait a moment

انتظر لحظة

Don't run

لا تجري

Walk quietly

امشي بهدوء

Go into the elevator

اذهب إلى المصعد

Stand back

ارجع للخلف

Push the number one button

اصغط على الزر رقم واحد

Wear your jacket, please

ارتدي جاكيتك من فضلك

Don't ride it in the house, please

لا تركبها في المنزل من فضلك

Don't forget to bring your swimming shorts

لا تنسى احضار شورت السباحة الخاص بك

Lower your voice, please

اخفض صوتك من فضلك

Keep the environment clean

حافظ على نظافة البيئة

Don't jump up and down

لا تقفز لأعلى ولأسفل



## Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
Present	Past	Present	Past
wait	waited	stand	stood
close	closed	choose	chose
push	pushed	bring	brought
jump	jumped	lose	lost
return	returned	spend	spent
listen	listened	ride	rode
hurry	hurried	forget	forgot
pick	picked	wear	wore

## Study the following

- This is The Alexandria Library. هذه مكتبة الإسكندرية.
- Can we go inside? هل يمكننا الدخول؟
- Yes, OK. Let's go in. I'm going first! نعم حسنًا. دعنا ندخل. سأدخل أولاً!
- This is a very important place. هذا مكان هام جدًا.
- Can we go upstairs to the Children's Library? هل يمكننا الصعود إلى مكتبة الطفل؟
- The doors are closing. الأبواب تفلق.
- Is this new bike for me? هل هذه الدراجة الجديدة لي؟
- What book are you reading? ما الكتاب الذي تقرأه؟
- The librarian will ask us to be quiet. سيطلب منك أمين المكتبة أن تبقى هادئًا.
- I can't wait for tomorrow's trip to the beach! لا أستطيع انتظار رحلة الغد إلى الشاطئ!
- We'll have a great time! سوف نحظى بوقت رائع!
- Do not eat in the library. لا تأكل في المكتبة.
- Bring your book back in two weeks. أعد كتابك في خلال أسبوعين.
- Drink your water outside. اشرب مياهك في الخارج.
- Don't use your mobile phone here. لا تستخدم هاتفك المحمول هنا.
- Do not lose your book. لا تضيع كتابك.
- Make sure you enjoy the books! تأكد أنك تستمتع بالكتب.

- نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء تعليمات بفعل أو عدم فعل شيء.
- أولاً الأمر المنهية.

### Inf. باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل.

- Stand up! Open the door.
- يمكن أن يأتي قبل الفعل كلمات تدل على الطلب المذهب أو اسم شخص.
- Please, pick up that trash.
- Ali, close the window.
- ثانياً الأمر المنهية.

### Don't / Never + Inf. باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل.

- Don't eat in the library, please.
- Never waste your time.
- لاحظ لا تبدأ الجملة الأمرية بفعل subject ولكن تبدأ بالفعل في المصدر.
- لا يأتي بعد فعل الأمر حرف جر (to)

## Listen, and read. Where are the children going?

استمع واقرأ.

### Tapescript

استمع إلى النص.

- Teacher** : OK, children. We're here now. This is The Alexandria Library.
- Reem** : Wow! It's **amazing** <sup>(1)</sup>. Can we go inside?
- Teacher** : Wait a **moment** <sup>(2)</sup>. Is **everybody** <sup>(3)</sup> here? Yes, OK. Let's go in.
- Ali** : I'm going first!
- Teacher** : Don't run, Ali. Walk **quietly** <sup>(4)</sup>. This is a very **important** <sup>(5)</sup> place.
- Ali** : I'm sorry.
- Neha** : Can we go **upstairs** <sup>(6)</sup> to the Children's Library?
- Teacher** : Yes. Go into the **elevator** <sup>(7)</sup>. Good. Stand back. The doors are closing. Don't jump up and down, Ali! Push the number one **button** <sup>(8)</sup>, Tarek. Great, thank you. We're going up!

### ملخص الدرس

- رائع / مذهش
- لحظة
- الجميع
- بهذوء
- هال
- الطابق العلوي
- مصعد
- لل



2 Reorder the words to make imperative sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جمل أمرية:

1 book - Check - a - good - to read.

2 talk - loudly, - Don't - please.

3 write - in - Don't - the book.

4 the book - Return - its place - to.

3 Read the library rules. Rewrite the rules with imperatives:

اقرأ قواعد المكتبة. أعد كتابة القواعد بالأوامر:

1 You should not eat in the library.

Don't eat in the library!

2 You have to bring your book back in two weeks.

3 You need to drink your water outside.

4 You cannot use your mobile phone here.

5 You should not lose your book.

6 You should make sure you enjoy the books!

4 Choose the correct answer

اختر لإجابة الصحيحة:

1 (Eat / Don't eat) fruits and vegetables to stay healthy.

2 (Spend / Don't spend) your time doing unimportant things.

3 Please, (writing / write) your answer in short sentences.

4 Stop making noise and (listen / not listen) to me, please.

5 You're late. (Hurries / Hurry up) or you'll miss the train.

6 Complete the conversations with the sentences in the box.

أكمل المحادثات بالجمل الموجودة في القائمة:

Wear your jacket, please.

Don't ride it in the house, please.

Don't forget to bring your swimming shorts.

Lower your voice, please.

Conversation 1

Rania : Wow, Mom, is this new bike for me?

Mom : Yes, but .....

Conversation 2

Basel : It's really cold outside.

Dad : You're right. ....

Conversation 3

Amal : Hi Nada! What book are you reading?

Nada : ....., or the librarian will ask us to be quiet.

Conversation 4

Sherif : I can't wait for tomorrow's trip to the beach!

Hazem : ....., We'll have a great time!

7 Read and complete from the list:

اقرأ واكمل من القائمة:

do - or - have - not - be

1 Come and ..... lunch with us.

2 Don't ..... unkind to your friends.

3 Please, study the lesson again and ..... the exercise.

4 Don't come late, ..... you will miss the first lesson.

5 Do ..... tell anyone your password.

7 Use imperatives to show what you should or shouldn't do inside a park, using words from the box:

استخدم الأوامر لإظهار ما يجب أو لا يجب عليك فعله داخل الحديقة، باستخدام كلمات من القائمة:

environment - park - flowers - help - trash can

1 Keep the environment clean.

2 .....

3 .....

4 .....

5 .....



# Activities



## 1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

1. We should encourage our ..... to visit the library.
2. The ..... is not the place for running or loud noises.
3. The children should keep the library .....
4. They should put the books on the .....

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ واطل:

- |                              |   |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1 You look hungry.           | ⊙ a Don't forget to bring your swimming shorts. |
| 2 Don't tell anyone          | ⊙ b Inside the house.                           |
| 3 Don't ride your new bike   | ⊙ c Hurry up or you'll miss the train!          |
| 4 We are going to the beach. | ⊙ d your password.                              |
| 5 You're late.               | ⊙ e unkind to your friends.                     |
|                              | ⊙ f Come and have lunch with us.                |

## 3 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. new - me - bike - Is - for - this? .....
2. book - shelf - on - Put - the - your. ....
3. go - Children's Library - Can - to - we - the? .....
4. a - good - Choose - read - book - to. ....
5. the library - eat - in - Don't. ....
6. is - important - place - This - a very. ....
7. time - have - will - a great - We. ....

## 4 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

Library rules

put the books on the shelf – walk quietly



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

# Lesson 4

## Gabi Learns A Lesson

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



recognize يتعرف على  
lost تائه  
strange-looking غريب المظهر  
tell the truth يقول الحقيقة

entertain يرفه يسلي  
creature مخلوق  
foolish أحمق  
apologize يعتذر

### Other words



villager قروي (أحد سكان القرية)  
walk far يمشي بعيداً  
sacks of beans أكياس الفاصوليا  
road طريق  
ibis طائر أبو منجل  
land الأرض  
branches أغصان فروع  
Anyway على أي حال  
snake ثعبان

even حتى  
unkindly بطريقة غير لطيفة  
crowds عدد كبير من الناس (حشود)  
dark مظلم  
enormous هائل كبير جداً  
jerboa حيوان الجربوع  
rudely بوقاحة  
sounds أصوات  
traders التجار

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

apologize يعتذر  
decide يقرر  
look at ينظر الي  
recognize يتعرف على  
turn يلتفت  
walk far يمشي بعيداً  
watch يشاهد  
pretend يتظاهر

#### Past ماضٍ

apologized  
decided  
looked at  
recognized  
turned  
walked far  
watched  
pretended

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

begin يبدأ  
fly يطير  
hear يسمع  
know يعرف  
say يقول  
see يري  
sell يبيع  
understand يفهم

#### Past ماضٍ

began  
flew  
heard  
knew  
said  
saw  
sold  
understood



## Study the following

- 1 Which animal does Gabi meet first? ما الحيوان الذي التقى به جابي أولاً؟
- 2 I will take them to the market for you. سوف آخذهم إلى السوق من أجلك.
- 3 He turned left and then right. استدار يساراً ثم يميناً.
- 4 Are you lost? هل أنت تائه؟
- 5 The ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way. استطاع طائر أبو منجل أن يطير عالياً فوق الأرض ويخبره بالطريق.
- 6 Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the branches of a tree. رأى جابي ثعباناً يراقبه من أغصان شجرة.
- 7 He wasn't telling the truth. لم يكن يقول الحقيقة.
- 8 The snake went to the market every day to entertain the crowds. ذهب الثعبان إلى السوق كل يوم للترفيه عن الحشود.
- 9 Look at those enormous ears. انظر إلى تلك الأذان الضخمة.
- 10 Do you need any help? هل تحتاج إلى أي مساعدة؟
- 11 The jerboa could hear the sounds of the market traders. استطاع الجربوع سماع أصوات تجار السوق.
- 12 He knew he was foolish and he was sorry. كان يعلم أنه أحمق وكان نادمًا.
- 13 He decided to go to sleep, and to apologize and ask for their help the next day. قرر أن ينام، وأن يعتذر ويطلب مساعدتهم في اليوم التالي.
- 14 Was Gabi right to behave in this way? هل كان جابي على حق في التصرف بهذه الطريقة؟

- 1 Listen, and read. Which animal does Gabi meet first? استمع واقرأ.

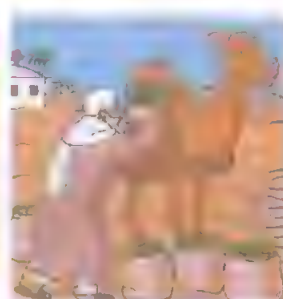
## Tapescript

## نص الاستماع

One day, a **villager**<sup>(1)</sup> wanted to sell his beans in the **market**<sup>(2)</sup>, but he couldn't walk far. His camel, Gabi, said, "Give me the **sacks of beans**<sup>(3)</sup> - I will take them to the market for you."

Gabi walked **along**<sup>(4)</sup> the **road**<sup>(5)</sup>. He turned left and then right and then left again. Soon, Gabi didn't **recognize**<sup>(6)</sup> the road.

- ١- قروي
- ٢- سوق
- ٣- أكياس البازيلاء
- ٤- تصادف
- ٥- طريق
- ٦- يعترف على



"Are you **lost**<sup>(7)</sup>?" called an **ibis**<sup>(8)</sup>. Gabi had never seen such a **strange-looking**<sup>(9)</sup> bird.

"No, I'm not lost," **pretended**<sup>(10)</sup> Gabi. Gabi didn't know that the ibis could fly high above the land and tell him the way.

Gabi saw a snake, watching him from the **branches**<sup>(11)</sup> of a tree.

"You look lost," said the snake.

"No, I'm not," said Gabi - again he wasn't **telling the truth**<sup>(12)</sup>.

"**Anyway**<sup>(13)</sup>, **even**<sup>(14)</sup> if I was, you can't help - you haven't even got legs," he said **unkindly**<sup>(15)</sup>. Gabi didn't know that the snake went to the market every day to **entertain**<sup>(16)</sup> the **crowds**<sup>(17)</sup>.

It began to get **dark**<sup>(18)</sup>. Gabi saw a little animal on the road in front of him.

"What a funny-looking **creature**<sup>(19)</sup>. Look at those **enormous**<sup>(20)</sup> ears," he thought to himself.

"Hello," said the **jerboa**<sup>(21)</sup>. "Do you need any help?"

"No, I don't!" replied Gabi **rudely**<sup>(22)</sup>. Gabi didn't know that the jerboa could hear the **sounds**<sup>(23)</sup> of the market **traders**<sup>(24)</sup>.

"OK, good night then," called the jerboa.

Soon, it was completely dark and Gabi understood he needed the animals' help. He knew he was **foolish**<sup>(25)</sup> and he was sorry. He decided to go to sleep, and to **apologize**<sup>(26)</sup> and ask for their help the next day.

- ٧- تائه
- ٨- أبو منجل
- ٩- غريب المظهر
- ١٠- تظاهر
- ١١- أغصان/ فروع
- ١٢- يقول الحقيقة
- ١٣- على أي دمار
- ١٤- حتى
- ١٥- بطريقة غير لطيفة
- ١٦- يسلي
- ١٧- الحشود
- ١٨- مظهر
- ١٩- مخلوق
- ٢٠- هائل/ كبير جدًا
- ٢١- الجربوع
- ٢٢- بوقاحة
- ٢٣- أصوات
- ٢٤- التجار
- ٢٥- أحمق
- ٢٦- يعتذر

## 2 Read the story again. Put the pictures in the correct order:

اقرأ القصة مرة أخرى. رتب الصور.





Read the story again. Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

اقرأ القصة مرة أخرى. أكمل الجمل بالكلمات الموجودة في القائمة:

fly – hear – help – snake

- At the start, Gabi offered to ..... the villager.
- The ibis could help because he could ..... over the land.
- The ..... could help because he went to the market every day.
- The jerboa could help because he could ..... very well.

Read and think. Talk to your partner: اقرأ وفكر. تحدث مع زميلك:

1 Why do you think that Gabi did not tell the truth to any of the animals?

- ☐ a He didn't want anyone to know that he was lost.
- ☐ b He was angry.
- ☐ c He was clever.

2 Was Gabi right to behave in this way?

- ☐ a Yes, because he didn't need help.
- ☐ b No, because he wasn't telling the truth.
- ☐ c Yes, because the villager told him to go alone.

3 What lesson did Gabi learn at the end of the story?

- ☐ a You shouldn't talk to strangers.
- ☐ b Being rude is important.
- ☐ c Asking for help is good.



## Pronunciation

الإدغام: في علم الصوتيات يعني دمج صوتين متحركين في مقطع صوتي واحد.

1 Listen and repeat: استمع وكرر:

/əʊ/	go يلعب	show يبين/ عرض	below أسفل	wrote كتب	grow ينمو/ يزرع
/aɪ/	bite يعض	right صحيح/ يمين	bike دراجة	write يكتب	
/ɔɪ/	boy ولد	toy لعبة	coin عملة معدنية	enjoy يستمتع بـ	point يشير
/eɪ/	make يصنع	play يلعب	eight ثمانية	bake يخبز	ache ألم

أحياناً يتم نطق نفس الصوت بطرق مختلفة مثلما في كلمتي **ate** & **eight**

2 Look at the table. Listen again and say: انظر للجدول. استمع مرة أخرى وقل:

1. go	2. bite	3. boy	4. make
show	right	toy	play

3 Listen and say. Write the words in the correct places in the table:

استمع وقل. اكتب الكلمات في المكان الصحيح في الجدول:

1. ache	2. below	3. eight	4. bake	5. coin	6. time
7. grow	8. bike	9. enjoy	10. wrote	11. write	12. point

4 Choose the correct word from the table above:

اختر الكلمة الصحيحة من الجدول أعلاه:

grow - eight - ache - make

- I have a bad tooth .....
- Look! There are ..... trees in the garden.
- Let's ..... a cake for my birthday!
- Does the farmer ..... vegetables?





الإجابة التقديرية أو التقريبية "estimated answer" ليست الإجابة الفعلية وإنما تعد تخميناً جيداً. على سبيل المثال، إذا قمنا بإضافة العدد ١٧ إلى العدد ١٢ فانت تعلم أن الإجابة هي "قريبة من ٣٠" وليست قريبة من ٦٠. هناك بعض المصطلحات التي يمكن أن نستخدمها في اللغة الإنجليزية للتعبير عن الإجابة التقديرية يمكنك أن تقول:

- It's about ... إنه حوالي ... - It's around ... إنه حوالي ...  
- It's close to ... إنه قريب من ... - It's near ... إنه قريب من ...



### 5 Look quickly and circle the correct estimated answer:

انظر بسرعة وضع دائرة حول الإجابة التقريبية الصحيحة:

- ①  $34 + 47 =$  60 - 80 - 120  
②  $77 + 120 =$  80 - 130 - 200  
③  $338 + 336 =$  480 - 680 - 980  
④  $1050 + 50 + 104 =$  1000 - 1200 - 2000  
⑤  $17 + 39 + 44 + 308 =$  300 - 400 - 500

⑥ لتقدير حاصل جمع عددين أو ثلاثة أو أكثر يجب أن تحدد الرقم الأكبر في كل عدد. لاحظ أولاً مكونات العدد.

1	5	4	7
آلاف	مئات	عشرات	آحاد

- فمثلاً في العددين 27 / 36

⑦ ننظر للرقم الأكبر في كل عدد حيث يمثل ② عشرون في 27 وتمثل ③ الرقم 30 في 36 لذلك حاصل

جمعهما سيزيد عن 50 ولن يصل إلى 70 إذا بالتقدير يصبح الناتج حوالي 60.

⑧ إذا طلب تقدير جمع 423 / 472 انظر إلى الرقم الأكبر وهو المئات ومجموعات المئات في العددين يساوي 800

لذلك إذا طلب منك التقدير بناءً على مجموع 23 / 72 بالتقريب يكون الناتج 900.



## Activities

### 1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- 1 The ibis could  
2 Let's have a cake  
3 The jerboa could  
4 Does the farmer  
5 The camel could

- a enormous ears.  
b hear the sounds of people.  
c grow vegetables?  
d for my birthday.  
e carry the sacks of beans.  
f fly high above the land.

### 2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

An old man wanted to buy food for his family, but he couldn't go. He asked his little son, Sameh, to go to the market for him. Sameh accepted and went to the market. On his way to the market, he met an old woman who was carrying heavy bags. He offered to help her, and the woman accepted and she was very happy. At the end, the woman thanked him for his help and gave him some apples.

#### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Sameh was a ..... boy.  
a bad b busy c good d sad  
2. The woman gave Sameh some .....  
a carrots b tomatoes c oranges d apples

#### B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined pronoun "he" refer to? .....  
4. Why did the woman thank Sameh? .....

### 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملًا صحيحة:

1. need - any - Do - help - you?  
2. the - beans - sacks - Give - of - me.



3. first - does - Why - Gabi - animal - meet?

4. fly - land - The idea - above - could - the.

5. telling - wasn't - lie - the truth.

6. this way - behave in - right - Why - to - Gabi?

#### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. are you lost

2. retaj and Karma went to the market

#### 5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

#### Helping others

offer help - respect them



#### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



tounst attractions أماكن الحذب السباحي  
relaxing مريح  
delicious لذيذ  
Cairo القاهرة  
London لندن  
New York نيويورك  
waterpark متنزه مائي  
park حديقة عامة

zoo حديقة حيوان  
markets أسواق  
restaurants مطاعم  
shopping malls مراكز التسوق  
location موقع  
history التاريخ  
culture الحضارة الثقافة  
arts الفنون

#### Other words

things أشياء  
places أماكن  
Buckingham Palace قصر باكنجهام  
theaters المسارح  
British Museum المتحف البريطاني  
boat trip رحلة بالقارب  
middle منتصف وسط  
International Park الحديقة الدولية  
Archaeological Center المركز الأثري  
shade ظل

the River Thames نهر التايمز  
bridges كباري  
walking around التجول  
worry قلق  
plenty الكثير  
it doesn't matter لا يهم  
treasures كنوز  
New Alamein مدينة العلمين الجديدة  
picnic نزهة خلوية

#### Adjectives

amazing مذهل  
beautiful جميل  
cool رائع  
exciting مثير  
famous مشهور  
fascinating رائعة

fun ممتع / مرح  
large كبير  
negative سلبي  
positive إيجابي  
perfect مثالي  
wonderful رائع



## Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs		Irregular verbs	
أفعال منتظمة		أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
rain تمطر	rained	see يرى	saw
visit يزور	visited	take يأخذ	took
like يحب	liked	choose يختار	chose
encourage يشجع	encouraged	feed يطعم	fed

## Study the following

- This is one of the most exciting cities in the world. هذه واحدة من أكثر المدن إثارة في العالم.
- It often rains here, but it doesn't matter. غالبًا ما تمطر هنا، لكن لا يهم.
- There are lots of fun things to do. يوجد الكثير من الأشياء الممتعة التي يمكنك القيام بها.
- You can take a relaxing boat trip on the River Thames. يمكنك القيام برحلة مريحة بالقارب على نهر التايمز.
- There are plenty of different restaurants to choose from. يوجد الكثير من المطاعم المختلفة للاختيار من بينها.
- You can find delicious food from all over the world here! يمكنك أن تجد هنا طعامًا لذيذًا من جميع أنحاء العالم.
- There are many exciting things to do in New Alamein. يوجد العديد من الأشياء المثيرة التي يمكنك القيام بها في العلمين الجديدة.
- The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. المدينة على الشاطئ لذا يمكنك زيارة البحر البارد عندما يكون الجو حارًا.
- You can visit the beautiful International Park. يمكنك زيارة الحديقة الدولية الجميلة.
- There are some amazing treasures there. يوجد بعض الكنوز المدهشة.
- I can't wait to see you in New Alamein. لا أستطيع الانتظار لرؤيتك في العلمين الجديدة.
- There is a big zoo right next to the school. توجد حديقة حيوانات كبيرة بجوار المدرسة.
- We can help to feed the animals. يمكننا المساعدة في إطعام الحيوانات.
- There is a waterpark that is always open. يوجد حديقة مائية مفتوحة دائمًا.
- It's free to go in! الدخول مجاني!
- There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food. يوجد سوق رائع يبيع جميع أنواع الأطعمة اللذيذة.
- This is our perfect town! هذه مدينتنا المثالية!

Read. Which place is the writer describing? Check (✓) the correct photo below:

اقرأ. أي الأماكن يصفها الكاتب؟ ضع علامة (✓) على الصورة الصحيحة أسفل:

استمع إلى النص:



This is one of the most **exciting**<sup>(1)</sup> cities in the world. It often rains here, but it **doesn't matter**<sup>(2)</sup> because there are lots of fun things to do. You can go on a big red bus and visit amazing **tourist attractions**<sup>(3)</sup>. You will see famous places like Buckingham Palace, theaters, and the **British Museum**<sup>(4)</sup>. You can take a **relaxing**<sup>(5)</sup> boat trip on the **River Thames**<sup>(6)</sup> and go under the **famous bridges**<sup>(7)</sup>. All the walking around will make you hungry! But don't worry, there are **plenty**<sup>(8)</sup> of different restaurants to choose from. You can find delicious food from all over the world here!

## Arabic Vocabulary

- 1- مثير
- 2- لا يهم
- 3- الجذب السياحي
- 4- المتحف البريطاني
- 5- مريح
- 6- نهر التايمز
- 7- كباري مشهورة
- 8- الكثير



Cairo



New York



London

Look and find. Are the adjectives positive or negative? Why?

انظر وأوجد. هل الصفات إيجابية أم سلبية؟ لماذا؟

- Find an adjective that describes the city .....
- Find an adjective that describes the boat trip. ....
- Find an adjective that describes the food. ....

## Tip!

When you are trying to encourage people to go to a place, use positive adjectives to describe the place.

عندما نحاول تشجيع الناس على الذهاب إلى مكان ما، استخدم الصفات الإيجابية لوصف المكان.





### How to write a descriptive paragraph

كيفية كتابة فقرة وصفية

You are going to write a description of your town or city. You want to encourage people to visit it. Write notes about the good things about your town or city. Think about famous attractions:

سوف تكتب وصفاً لمدينتك أو بلدتك، وتريد تشجيع الناس على زيارتها. اكتب ملاحظات عن الأشياء الجيدة عن بلدتك أو مدينتك. فكر في معالم الجذب الشهيرة. ضع الآتي في الاعتبار:

- |  |                                       |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| - famous attractions                     | أماكن جذب شهيرة                       |
| - location - is it near a beach / river? | الموقع هل هي قريبة من الشاطئ / النهر؟ |
| - history                                | التاريخ                               |
| - culture                                | الثقافة / الحضارة                     |
| - arts                                   | الفنون                                |

### Read the paragraph about New Alamein. Underline the adjectives:

اقرأ الفقرة القادمة عن مدينة العلمين الجديدة. ضع خط تحت الصفات:

استمع إلى النص:



There are many exciting things to do in New

Alamein<sup>(1)</sup>. The city is on the beach so you can visit the cool sea when it's hot. This beautiful beach is 14 kms long! There is also a large, green lake right in the middle<sup>(2)</sup> of the city!

You can also visit the beautiful International

Park<sup>(3)</sup>. If you want to learn about the fascinating history<sup>(4)</sup> of the area, then visit the Archaeological Center<sup>(5)</sup>. There are some amazing treasures<sup>(6)</sup> there. I can't wait to see you in New Alamein.



#### Amazing Museum

- ١- العلمين الجديدة
- ٢- وسط
- ٣- حديقة الدولية
- ٤- التاريخ
- ٥- المركز الأثري
- ٦- كنوز



### How to make a poster about your perfect town

كيف تصنع ملصق عن مدينتك المثالية؟

Make a poster about your perfect town. Think about the types of places that you want in your perfect town. Here are some ideas

اصنع ملصق عن مدينتك المثالية. فكر في أنواع الأماكن التي تريدها في مدينتك المثالية. إليك بعض الأفكار:

a waterpark	منتزه مائي
a park	حديقة عامة
a zoo	حديقة حيوان
markets	أسواق
restaurants	مطاعم
shopping malls	مراكز التسوق

### Read and do:

اقرأ وافعل:

1. Look at the poster. Study the heading, text, and pictures.

انظروا إلى الملصق. ادرسوا العنوان والنص والصور.

2. Think about your poster. What will you include? فكروا في ملصقكم. ماذا سيتضمن؟

3. Decide who will do what. Do your research. قررروا من سيفعل ماذا. قوموا بالبحث.

4. Work together to make your poster. Check your work at the end.

اعملوا سوياً لصنع الملصق. تأكدوا من عملكم في النهاية.

استمع إلى النص:

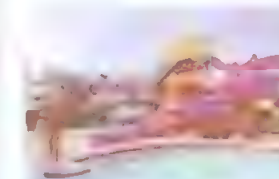


### Our perfect town

#### Heading

العنوان الرئيسي

In our perfect town, there is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. It is really hot in our town, so there is a waterpark that is always open. It's free to go in! There is a wonderful market that sells all kinds of delicious food, like fresh bread and fresh fruit and vegetables. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go for family picnics in the shade. This is our perfect town!



Pictures

Text

النص



# Activities



## 1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

1. Salma lives in a small .....
2. There is a ..... next to Salma's house.
3. Salma likes to play with her ..... after school.
4. Salma's ..... is on the other side of the park.

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

- 1 You can go to the beach
- 2 If you want to learn about history
- 3 I like to feed animals
- 4 We go to the park for
- 5 You can take a relaxing boat

B

- a. at a big restaurant.
- b. at the zoo.
- c. trip on the River Thames.
- d. visit the Archaeological Center.
- e. family picnics in the shade.
- f. when it's hot.

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. any - amazing - Are - treasures - there?

2. one - cities - of - This is - the most - exciting.

3. you - do - What - in - can - New Alamein?

4. find - here - You - delicious - can - food.

## 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. Lena and heba went to the park

2. where do you live, and ?

# Review



## Places



bank  
بنك



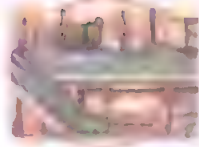
factory  
مصنع



monument  
نصب تذكاري



library  
مكتبة



shopping mall  
مول تجاري



square  
ميدان



station  
محطة



museum  
متحف



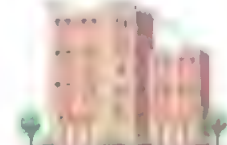
market  
سوق



beach  
شاطئ



supermarket  
سوبر ماركت



hotel  
فندق



restaurant  
مطعم

mint tea

شاي بالنعناع

local cuisine

مأكولات / أطباق محلية

shopping

التسوق

spend ages

يقضي الكثير من الوقت

originally

أصلاً / في الأصل

on vacation

في إجازة

evidence

دليل

monuments

آثار

paintings

رسومات

artifacts

مصنوعات بدوية

hieroglyphics

اللغة الهيروغليفية

tombs

مقابر

apologize

يعتذر

tourist attractions

أماكن الجذب السياحي

relaxing

مريح

delicious

لذيذ

Cairo

القاهرة

London

لندن

New York

نيويورك

waterpark

منتزه مائي

recognize

يتعرف على

lost

تائه

strange-looking

غريب المظهر

tell the truth

يقول الحقيقة

entertain

يرفه يسلي

location

موقع

history

التاريخ

culture

الحضارة الثقافة

arts

الفنون



# Activities



## 1 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

1. Salma lives in a small .....
2. There is a ..... next to Salma's house.
3. Salma likes to play with her ..... after school.
4. Salma's ..... is on the other side of the park.

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

- 1 You can go to the beach
- 2 If you want to learn about history
- 3 I like to feed animals
- 4 We go to the park for
- 5 You can take a relaxing boat

B

- a. at a big restaurant.
- b. at the zoo.
- c. trip on the River Thames.
- d. visit the Archaeological Center.
- e. family picnics in the shade.
- f. when it's hot.

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. any - amazing - Are - treasures - there?

2. one - cities - of - This is - the most - exciting.

3. you - do - What - in - can - New Alamein?

4. find - here - You - delicious - can - food.

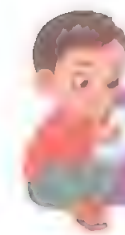
## 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. Lena and heba went to the park

2. where do you live, amal ?

# Review



## Places



bank  
بنك



factory  
مصنع



monument  
نصب تذكاري



library  
مكتبة



shopping mall  
مول تجاري



square  
ميدان



station  
محطة



museum  
متحف



market  
سوق



beach  
شاطئ



supermarket  
سوبر ماركت



hotel  
فندق



restaurant  
مطعم

mint tea

شاي بالنعناع

local cuisine

مأكولات / أطباق محلية

shopping

التسوق

spend ages

يقضي الكثير من الوقت

originally

أصلاً / في الأصل

on vacation

في إجازة

evidence

دليل

monuments

آثار

paintings

رسومات

artifacts

مصنوعات بدوية

hieroglyphics

اللغة الهيروغليفية

tombs

مقابر

apologize

يعتذر

tourist attractions

أماكن الجذب السياحي

relaxing

مريح

delicious

لذيذ

Cairo

القاهرة

London

لندن

New York

نيويورك

waterpark

منتزه مائي

recognize

يتعرف على

lost

تائه

strange-looking

غريب المظهر

tell the truth

يقول الحقيقة

entertain

يرفه يسلي

location

موقع

history

التاريخ

culture

الحضارة الثقافة

arts

الفنون



exciting	مثير
famous	مشهور
fascinating	رائعة
fun	مرح
cool	رائع

negative	سلبية
positive	إيجابية
perfect	مثالي
wonderful	رائع

## Grammar

traditions	تقاليد
feasts	أعياد
signs	علامات إشارات
scenes	مشاهد
water carriers	سقايات
writing symbols	رموز الكتابة
Alexandria Library	مكتبة الإسكندرية
sacks of beans	أكياس الفاصوليا
ibis	طائر أبو منجل
branches	أغصان فروع
crowds	الحشود
enormous	هائل

jerboa	حيوان الجربوع
rudely	بوقاحة
traders	التجار
Buckingham Palace	قصر باكنجهام
British Museum	المتحف البريطاني
International Park	الحديقة الدولية
Archaeological Center	المركز الأثري
shade	ظل
it doesn't matter	لا يهم
treasures	كنوز
New Alamein	مدينة العلمين الجديدة

## Conjugation of verbs

## Regular verbs

Present	ماضارع	Past	ماضي
serve	يقدم طعام	served	
remind	يذكر	reminded	
borrow	يستعير	borrowed	
own	يملك	owned	
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	
bury	يدفن	buried	
push	يضغط يدفع	pushed	

## Irregular verbs

Present	ماضارع	Past	ماضي
find out	يكشف	found out	
show	يبين	showed	
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned	
build	يبنى	built	
teach	يعلم	taught	
stand	يقف	stood	
choose	يختار	chose	

return	يعود	returned	write	يكتب	wrote
hurry	يسرع	hurried	lose	يفقد	lost
recognize	يتعرف على	recognized	spend	يقضي	spent
pretend	يتظاهر	pretended	forget	ينسى	forgot
encourage	يشجع	encouraged	feed	يطعم	fed

## Grammar

## قواعد لغوية

● نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء تعليمات بفعل أو عدم فعل شيء.

- اولا الأمر المنهية.

Inf. باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل.

- Do your homework.

● يمكن أن يأتي قبل الفعل كلمات تدل على الطلب المهذب أو اسم شخص:

- Please, open the window.

- Ali, close the window.

- ثانيا الأمر المنهية.

Don't / Never + inf. باقي الجملة + مصدر الفعل.

- Don't play in the street.

- Never come to school late.

● لاحظ لا تبدأ الجملة الأمرية بفاعل subject ولكن تبدأ بالفعل في المصدر:

● لا يأتي بعد فعل الأمر حرف جر (to)



## Pronunciation

● الإدغام diphthong في علم الصوتيات يعني دمج صوتين متحركين في مقطع صوتي واحد.

/aʊ/	go يذهب	show يبين/عرض	below أسفل	wrote كتب	grow ينمو/يزرع
/aɪ/	bite يعض	right صحيح/يمين	bike دراجة	write يكتب	
/ɔɪ/	boy ولد	toy لعبة	coin عملة معدنية	enjoy يستمتع بـ	point يشير
/eɪ/	make يصنع	play يلعب	eight ثمانية	bake يخبز	ache ألم



Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words

Answers to Paragraphs

Lesson 1

A visit to Alexandria

- 1 Last week was my holiday. I went to Alexandria with my family. It's an exciting place to visit. My favorite place is the beach. We went to the beach and had a great time. I swam and played football with my brothers.



Lesson 2

Library rules

- 2 At the library, we should respect the rules. We should put the books on the shelf. We should walk quietly. We should not eat in the library. We should not use our mobile phones there. We should not talk loudly.



Lesson 3

Helping others

- 3 We should be helpful. We should offer help to anyone carrying heavy bags. We should also help old people. If a person is poor and needs money, we should give him money. If a person is hungry, we should give them food.



Activity 10

My city

- 4 I live in a big city. My city is very clean and beautiful. The people in my city are friendly. There are many places to visit. There are big markets, shopping malls, schools, hospitals, and parks. I love my beautiful city.



Al-Azhar Exercises



الأسئلة الخاصة بالأزهر الشريف

A- Listening

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

1. Yesterday, I visited Alexandria with my ..... (brothers - teachers - friends)  
2. There's even a ..... (beach - river - lake)

B- Language Functions

- 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words below: أقرأ وأكمل:

Library - reading - going

- A : Where are the children .....?  
B : They are going to Alexandria .....  
A : What are they doing?  
They are ..... stories.

C- Reading Comprehension

- 3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ وأختَر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Uncle Mahmoud has a big house with a beautiful garden outside the house. He has no children, but he has two pets. He likes keeping pets and he looks after them very well. He has a dog called "Lion" and a cat called "Pos Pos". Uncle Mahmoud feeds his pets every day. He is a kind man.

Choose the correct answer:

1. Uncle Mahmoud has a ..... house. (small - tall - big)  
2. Uncle Mahmoud has a beautiful garden ..... the house (outside - inside - under)  
3. He has no ..... (pets - house - children)  
4. He has a dog called ..... (Lion - Pos - Pos)  
5. Uncle Mahmoud feeds his pets every ..... (day - week - year)



## D- Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Come and ..... lunch with us.

- a have      b play      c sleep

2. Alexandria is a big .....

- a farm      b park      c city

3. Study the lesson again and ..... the exercise.

- a make      b do      c does

4. Keep the ..... clean.

- a environment      b sun      c moon

5. People were buried in ..... when they died.

- a parks      b tombs      c farms

## E- The Reader

5 Choose the correct answer : اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

1. Mom has some ..... to look at the amazing birds.

- a binoculars      b books      c pens

2. Malak is very pleased because she loves .....

- a birds      b animals      c fruits

## F- Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن:

Your city



## Activity

ON UNIT

10

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

1 Every year, I go to Alexandria with my friends.

2 Alexandria is a very big city.

3 We always stay in a house near the beach.

4 We always have lunch at a big restaurant.

2 Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

1. If you like reading, the ..... is a good place for you .

2. You should not ..... in the library.

3. You cannot use your mobile ..... inside the library.

4. Put your book on the ..... after you read it.

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

1 You can go to the station

2 Ancient Egyptians were buried

3 You can keep your money safely

4 Don't touch paintings

5 We can borrow or read books

a. when you visit a museum.

b. to catch a train.

c. at the library.

d. in huge tombs.

e. is our perfect town.

f. at the bank.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi friends! My name is Mai and I live in Ras El-Bar. It isn't a very big town near the sea. About 10,000 people live here. There are about thirty shops in Ras El-Bar and there are three supermarkets. In my town, you can get everything you need. There are five banks and a post office. There is a police station and a library. I usually go to the market with my mom.

ساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة. Help your child deal with such questions.



## Unit 10 Let's visit Egypt

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The main idea of this passage is about .....  
☐ a Mai's family    ☐ b Ras El-Bar    ☐ c the sea    ☐ d the shops
- Mai lives in a ..... town.  
☐ a small    ☐ b big    ☐ c large    ☐ d cute

B- Answer the following questions:

- How many people live in Ras El-Bar?  
 .....
- What does the underlined pronoun "It" refer to?  
 .....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- big - city - My - very - is.  
 .....
- in - , please - the - Don't - library - eat.  
 .....
- need - Do - any - you - help?  
 .....
- deor - open - Please - the.  
 .....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- which place would you like to visit  
 .....
- let's have a cake for my birthday  
 .....

7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:  
 اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

My city

many places - near the river



Theme

4

## Being responsible

Unit

11

## Getting out in the fresh air

الخروج في الهواء الطلق



### Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

- Listen, read, research, and write about nature trails.  
 - يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن ممرات التنزه الطبيعية.
- Recognize adjectives and adverbs.  
 - يتعرف الطالب على الصفات والظروف / الأحوال.
- Learn words about nature.  
 - يتعلم الطالب كلمات عن الطبيعة.
- Listen to a conversation about hiking.  
 - يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة عن التجول (السير على الأقدام لمسافات طويلة).
- Read about hiking the Red Sea Mountain Trail.  
 - يقرأ الطالب عن التجول في ممشى (ممر) البحر الأحمر الجبلي.
- Read and say words with /n/ and /ŋ/ sounds.  
 - يقرأ الطالب ويقول كلمات تشتمل على الأصوات /n/ و /ŋ/.
- Write text messages.  
 - يكتب الطالب رسائل نصية.
- Design a nature trail.  
 - يصمم الطالب صورة ممشى (ممر) طبيعي.





# Getting out in nature

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



leaf ورقة شجر



city مدينة



village قرية

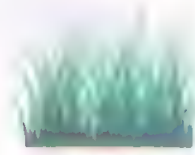


tree شجرة



plant نبات

## Nature الطبيعة



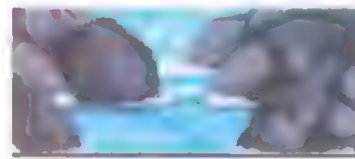
grass عشب / حشائش



hill تل



rock صخرة



stream مجرى / جدول مائي

## Other words

## كلمات أخرى

get out  
river  
feeling  
branch  
difficult  
like  
hard  
famous

يخرج  
نهر  
لملمس / إحساس  
فرع / غصن  
صعب  
مثل  
صلب  
مشهور

weather  
wooden  
trunk  
town  
Hurghada  
large stone  
building  
background

الطقس  
خشبي  
جذع / ساق (شجرة)  
بلدة (مدينة صغيرة)  
مدينة الفردقة  
حجر كبير  
مبنى  
خلفية (لصورة مثلاً)

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

love يحب  
climb ينسلق

#### Past ماض

loved  
climbed

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present مضارع

feel يشعر  
grow يزرع  
eat يأكل  
have / has يمتلك  
see يرى

#### Past ماض

felt  
grew  
ate  
had  
saw

## Grammar

## قواعد لغوية

### Countable Nouns الاسماء التي تعد Singular and Plural المفرد والجمع

- تكون الأسماء الجمع من الأسماء المفردة كالآتي:

١- بإضافة **s** لآخر الاسم:

house → houses village → villages  
tree → trees rock → rocks

٢- بإضافة **es** لآخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الآتية:

**s - ss - sh - ch - x - o**

grass → grasses branch → branches

٣- بإضافة **ies** إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف **y** وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف **y**

- أما إذا سبق حرف **y** حرف متحرك لا يحذف ويضاف **s** فقط.

حرف ساكن + **y** → **ies** city → cities  
حرف متحرك + **y** → **ys** boy → boys

٤- بإضافة **ves** لآخر الاسم إذا انتهى بـ **f** / **fe** حيث تحذف كما يلي:

leaf → leaves knife → knives

٥- هناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هي:

tooth → teeth mouse → mice ox → oxen  
foot → feet man → men woman → women



## Study the following

- 1 A stream is like a river, but smaller. الجدول يشبه النهر، ولكنه أصغر.
- 2 I love the feeling of green grass. أحب ملمس العشب/ الحشائش الخضراء.
- 3 A tree is a very tall plant with branches and wooden trunk. الشجرة عبارة عن نبات طويل ذو أفرع وجذع خشبي.
- 4 A village is much smaller than a town or city. القرية أصغر كثيراً من بلدة أو مدينة.
- 5 It's quite difficult to climb that hill because it's very high. إنه من الصعب أن تتسلق هذا التل لأنه مرتفع جداً.
- 6 Some famous cities in Egypt are Cairo, Alexandria, and Hurghada. بعض المدن الشهيرة في مصر هي القاهرة والاسكندرية والغردقة.
- 7 A rock is hard. It is a large stone. تتصف الصخرة بالصلابة. هي حجر كبير.
- 8 I like growing tomato plant because I like eating tomatoes. أحب زراعة نبات الطماطم لأنني أحب أكل الطماطم.
- 9 That plant has flowers and lots of green leaves. إن لهذا النبات أزهار وكثير من أوراق الشجر الخضراء.

1 Listen and write the number next to the word: استمع واكتب الرقم بجوار الكلمة:

1- grass 2- hill 3- rock 4- plant 5- tree 6- leaf 7- stream 8- village 9- city



## Lesson 1

2 Listen again and say the words:

استمع مرة أخرى وقل الكلمات.

3 Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1. Then listen and check:

أكمل الجمل بالكلمات من تمرين 1. ثم استمع وتأكد.

- 1 A stream is like a river, but smaller.
- 2 I love the feeling of green .....
- 3 A ..... is a very tall plant with branches and a wooden trunk.
- 4 A ..... is much smaller than a town or city.
- 5 It's quite difficult to climb that ..... because it's very high.
- 6 Some famous ..... in Egypt are Cairo, Alexandria, and Hurghada.
- 7 A ..... is hard. It is a large stone.
- 8 I like growing tomato ..... because I like eating tomatoes.
- 9 That plant has flowers and lots of green .....

4 Describe the plants below. Use words from Exercise 1. Think about the buildings, nature, and weather:

صف الصورة بالأسفل. استخدم الكلمات من تمرين 1. فكر في المباني والطبيعة والطقس.

- 1 I can see some .....
- 2 In the background I can see .....
- 3 .....
- 4 .....





# Activities



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

1 Ali went to the city.

2 He saw many trees.

3 He helped his uncle to plant apples.

4 He slept on the grass.

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

1 A stream is like

2 A tree is a very tall plant

3 Cairo is a famous

4 That plant has

5 What can

a. with branches and a wooden trunk.

b. you see in the photo?

c. a river, but smaller.

d. flowers and lots of green leaves.

e. city in Egypt.

f. under my feet.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. like - tomato - I - growing - plant.

2. famous - Alexandria - Egypt - is - in - city - a.

3. hill - high - The - is - very.

4. is - smaller - than - A village - a town - much.

4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. do you like growing tomato plant

2. It s quite difficult to climb that hill

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

## LESSON

# 2

## Nature trail weekend

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



go on a trail يذهب للسير في ممشى (درب)  
date تاريخ اليوم

sounds like fun يبدو ممتعاً

### Other words

### كلمات أخرى

hike التجول (السير لمسافات طويلة)  
view منظر  
weekend عطلة نهاية الأسبوع  
trip رحلة  
across عبر  
Spanish اللغة الإسبانية  
worker عامل  
designer مصمم (شيء)  
speaker متحد

diver غطاس  
invitation دعوة  
alone بمفرده  
swimmer سباح  
tortoise سلحفاة برية  
race سباق  
runner عداء  
How's life? كيف تصوير الامور؟  
take photos يلتقط صور

### Adjectives

### صفات

cool رائع  
brave شجاع  
fine رائع / جميل  
boring مل  
sunny مشمس  
slow بطيء  
quick / fast سريع  
happy سعيد  
hard صعب / صلب

good جيد  
bad سيء  
heavy ثقيل  
sad حزين  
careful حريص  
nice لطيف  
nervous متوتر عصبي  
active نشيط  
polite مؤدب



## Conjugation of verbs

المعرفة والفعل

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	ماضٍ	Past	ماضٍ	Present	ماضٍ	Past	ماضٍ
decide	يقرر	decided	قرر	swim	يسبح	swam	سبح
prefer	يفضل	preferred	فضل	write	يكتب	wrote	كتب
sound	يبدو	sounded	بدى	sing	يغنى	sang	غنى
dive	يقطس	dived	قطس	drive	يقود (سيارة)	drove	قود
accept	يقبل	accepted	قبل	run	يجرى	ran	جرب
contact	يتصل	contacted	تصل	win	يفوز	won	فاز
invite	يدعو	invited	دع	leave	يترك	left	ترك
guess	يخمن	guessed	خمن	take	يأخذ	took	أخذ

## Definitions

تعريفات

nature trail (n) A place you go for a hike in nature to see all the plants and animals.  
مسار (مسار) طبيعي

## Grammar

قواعد النحوي

- 1 تصف الصفة الاسم وتأتي قبله.   
 I met a nice man. قابلت رجلاً لطيفاً.   
 تأتي الصفة بعد فعل يكون (verb to be).   
 Ex. The boy is brave. الصبي شجاع.   
 يمكن أن يأتي قبل الاسم أكثر من صفة، ومثال ذلك،   
 Ex. It was a nice sunny day. كان يوم مشمس لطيف.

## Adjectives

- 2 تستخدم الأحوال لوصف الفعل وتوضح لنا كيف وقع الفعل.   
 تكون الأحوال بإضافة **ly** آخر الصفة.   
 Examples of adverbs:   
 slow بطيء slowly   
 quick سريع quickly   
 active نشيط actively   
 polite مؤدب politely

- Ex. She walked slowly down the road. سارت ببطء في الطريق.   
 Ex. He moved quickly. تحرك بسرعة.   
 إذا انتهت الصفة بـ (y) تحذف ويضاف مكانها (ily).

happy	سعيد	happily	بسعادة
heavy	غزير (المطر)	heavily	بغزارة

- Ex. He did his homework happily. قام بعمل الواجب المنزلي بسعادة.   
 Ex. It rained heavily. أمطرت بغزارة.

بعض الصفات يمكن أن تستخدم كأحوال بدون إضافة (ly) مثل:

fast / hard / late

fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة
hard	صعب / شاق	hard	بجد
late	متأخر	late	متأخراً

Ex. She drove the car fast. (not fastly)

تحويل الصفة good إلى ظرف / حال:

good	جيد	well	جيداً / بشكل جيد
------	-----	------	------------------

Ex. She spoke English well. (not goodly)

الصفة hard إذا أضيف لها لا يتغير معناها كالاتي:

hard	شاق / صعب / صلب	hardly	نادرأما / بالكاد
------	-----------------	--------	------------------

Ex. He worked hard. (not hardly)

## Study the following

- My family and I want to go on a trail to Wadi Degla.   
 - نريد أنا وعائلتي أن نذهب للممشى إلى وادي دجلة.
- Wadi Degla is cool because you can see lots of animals.   
 - وادي دجلة مكان رائع لأنك يمكنك رؤية الكثير من الحيوانات.
- You can swim at the Blue Lagoon!   
 - يمكنك السباحة في البحيرة الشاطئية الزرقاء.
- I know you walk quickly and swim well.   
 - أعرف أنك تسير بسرعة وتسبح جيداً.
- The nature trail trip sounds like fun.   
 - تبدو رحلة الممشى الطبيعي ممتعة.
- I can swim quickly.   
 - يمكنني السباحة بسرعة.
- There are lots of animals in Wadi Degla.   
 - هناك الكثير من الحيوانات في وادي دجلة.
- Reem is a good swimmer.   
 - ريم سباحة ماهرة.
- My friend is a nice person.   
 - صديقي شخص لطيف.
- The tortoise walked slowly across the grass.   
 - سارت السلحفاة عبر العشب ببطء.
- She ran quickly. She won the race!   
 - جرت بسرعة. فازت بالسباق!
- My dad speaks Spanish really well.   
 - يتحدث والدي الإسبانية بشكل جيد جداً.



## 1 Listen and read the emails. Where and when do they decide to go?

استمع واقرأ رسائل البريد الإلكتروني. أين ومتى قرروا أن يذهبوا؟

## Tapescript

## نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



From : Dina  
To : Reem  
Subject : **Nature trail**<sup>(1)</sup> weekend

Hi Reem,  
How's life?

**Summer valley**<sup>(2)</sup>? My family and I want to go on a trail to

**Wadi Degla**<sup>(3)</sup> or the **Blue Lagoon**<sup>(4)</sup> at **Dubai**<sup>(5)</sup>. Mom said I

can take a friend, and I want to take you! Can you come?

Mom said you and I can **choose**<sup>(6)</sup> which we like best of

the two places. Wadi Degla is **good**<sup>(7)</sup> because you can see lots of animals, but you can **swim**<sup>(8)</sup> at the Blue Lagoon!

I know you walk **quickly**<sup>(9)</sup> and swim **well**<sup>(10)</sup>, so which nature trail do you like?

Also, what **dates**<sup>(11)</sup> do you prefer, 13-14 July or 20-21 July?

Bye for now!

Dina

- Arabic Meaning
- ١- ممشى طبيعي
  - ٢- حوض صيفي
  - ٣- وادي دجلة
  - ٤- البحيرة الزرقاء
  - ٥- مدينة دهب
  - ٦- يقرر
  - ٧- رائع
  - ٨- يسبح
  - ٩- بسرعة
  - ١٠- جيدا
  - ١١- تواريخ

## Tapescript

## نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



From : Reem  
To : Dina  
Subject : Re: Nature trail weekend

Hi Dina,

**Life's great!**<sup>(1)</sup> How are you?

The nature trail trip **sounds like fun**<sup>(2)</sup>, and I **really**<sup>(3)</sup> want to come! I think the Blue Lagoon is **fine**<sup>(4)</sup> because we can swim and **dive**<sup>(5)</sup>! Yes, I can swim quickly, but you're very **brave**<sup>(6)</sup>! Remember when you dived from that rock? I just talked to my mom and the weekend 20- 21 July is good for me. She's going to **call**<sup>(7)</sup> your mom to check everything. Can't wait to see you!

Reem

## Arabic Meaning

- ١- الحياة رائعة
- ٢- تبدو ممتعة
- ٣- حقا
- ٤- جميلة
- ٥- نغطس
- ٦- شجاعة
- ٧- تتصل بـ

## 2 Read the emails again. Match the sentence halves:

اقرأ رسائل البريد الإلكتروني مرة أخرى. صل أنصاف الجمل.

1 Dina

2 Reem

3 Dina and Reem

4 Reem's mom

- a. both like swimming.  
b. invites Reem to go on a nature trail.  
c. is going to contact Dina's mom.  
d. accepts the invitation.

## 3 Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false ones:

قرر إن كانت الجملة صحيحة أم خطأ. صحح الجملة الخطأ.

1. Reem wrote the email to Dina first.

Dina wrote the email to Reem first.

2. Dina wants to go on a trail alone.

3. There are lots of animals in Wadi Degla.

4. Reem isn't going trailing with Dina.

5. Reem is a good swimmer.

6. Reem thinks that the nature trail trip could be boring.

7. Reem says Dina is a brave diver.

8. Reem thinks that the weekend 20-21 July is good for her.

9. Reem's mom wants her to go for a trail with a friend.

10. Dina's mom is going to call Reem's mom to check everything.

## 4 Change these adjectives to adverbs:

حول هذه الصفات إلى ظروف.

## Adjectives

happy  
slow  
quick  
heavy  
sad  
hard  
good  
careful

## Adverbs

happily  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

## 5 Circle the correct word for the sentences:

ضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة.

1. My friend is a **nice** / nicely person.2. My sister says I sing **bad** / badly.3. The man opened the door **nervous** / nervously.4. Adam drove the car **fast** / fastly.5. At the end of the story, they all lived **happy** / happily ever after.



# 6 Complete the sentences with some of the words from Exercise 4:

أكمل الجمل ببعض من الكلمات من تمرين 4:

- The tortoise walked ..... across the grass.
- She ran ..... She won the race!
- It was raining very ..... when I left home.
- My dad speaks Spanish really .....
- I did my homework ..... I didn't want to make mistakes!

# 7 Make sentences with the adjectives in the box as adverbs:

كون جملاً مستخدماً الصفات في القائمة كظروف:

good - quick - bright

- I can speak English well.
- .....
- .....

# 8 Look at the example and complete the sentences using the adjectives and the adverbs properly:

أنظر إلى المثال وأكمل العبارات مستخدماً الصفات والظروف بشكل صحيح:

- Wael swims well. He is a good swimmer.
- Samir is an active worker. He works .....
- Salma runs quickly. She is a ..... runner.
- Jailan speaks politely. She is a ..... speaker.
- Shorouk is a hard worker. She works .....
- Sahar sings nicely. She is a ..... singer.
- Hatem is a clever designer. He designs .....



Did you know?  
هل تعلم؟

A fantastic hiking trail in Egypt is the Nuweiba Trail in Sinai. You can see the famous Colored Canyon there.

يعد ممشى التجول في مدينة نويبع في سيناء في مصر ممشى رائع. تستطيع رؤية الوادي الملون الشهير هناك.

# Activities

## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): (استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)):

- Wadi Degla is a bad place.
- Wadi Degla is cool.
- I can swim at the Blue Lagoon.
- I will visit Wadi Degla with my family in summer.

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- | A                            |   | B                    |
|------------------------------|---|----------------------|
| 1 The tortoise walked slowly | ⊙ | a. She won the race! |
| 2 She ran quickly.           | ⊙ | b. the Blue Lagoon!  |
| 3 Reem is a good             | ⊙ | c. across the grass. |
| 4 You can swim at            | ⊙ | d. a nice person.    |
| 5 My friend is               | ⊙ | e. a nice place.     |
|                              | ⊙ | f. swimmer.          |

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- Spanish - well - My dad - really - speaks.
- happily - He - his - did - homework.
- you, - are - Dina - How?
- fun - like - trail trip - sounds - The nature

## 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- yes, I can swim quickly

- did he work hard



# The Red Sea Mountain Trail

## Key vocabulary



**sunglasses**  
نظارة شمس



**hiking** التجول  
(السير لمسافات طويلة)



**hiking shoes**  
حذاء التجول



**scarf**  
كوفية/وشاح

استمع إلى المفردات



**blanket** بطانية

## Hiking things

الأشياء المستخدمة  
في التجول



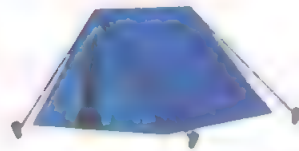
**water bottle**  
زجاجة مياه



**map** خريطة



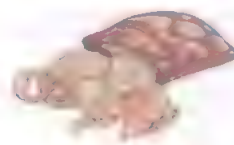
**hat** قبعة



**tent** خيمة



**warm sweater**  
سترة لحفظ الدفء



**snacks**  
وجبات خفيفة



**clothes**  
ملابس

fascinating  
mountain trail

مبهـر / فائق  
ممشى (ممر) جبلي

route

طريق / مسار

## Other words كلمات أخرى

the countryside	الريف
long-distance	دو حافة طريق
through	خلال
wonderful	رائع
tourism project	مشروع سياحي
community	مجتمع
Maaza people	شعب قبيلة المعازة البدوية
wind	الرياح
neck	عنق / رقبة
culture	الثقافة
history	التاريخ
ancient	قديم
trading	التجارة

hunting	الصيد
century	قرن (١٠٠ عام)
guide	مرشد
hiker	رحالة / متحول
geography	الجغرافيا
sand	الرمال
heat	الحرارة
prepared	مستعد
look after	يعتني بـ
get hungry	يحبوع
get thirsty	يعطش
get cold	يشعر بالبرد
fall over	يسقط

## Conjugation of verbs تصريفات الأفعال

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Present

open	يفتح / يبدأ العمل
preserve	يحافظ على
follow	يتبع (مسار)
complete	يكمل
hike	يتجول
protect	يحمي

#### Past

opened
preserved
followed
completed
hiked
protected

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present

tell	ينـجـر
take	يستغرق (وقت)
get	يصبح
run	يمتد

#### Past

told
took
got
ran

## Definitions

**hiking (n)** التجول  
(السير لمسافات طويلة)

to go and walk in the countryside



## Study the following

- 1 What are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail ?  
- ماذا ستأخذ معك إلى ممشى البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟
- 2 The trail follows ancient trading and hunting routes.  
- الممشى يتبع طرق التجارة والصيد القديمة.
- 3 The Maaza people used these routes for centuries.  
- استخدم شعب قبيلة المعازة البدوية هذه الطرق لقرون من الزمن.
- 4 They look after the trail carefully.  
- يعتنون بالمشى بعناية.
- 5 They work as guides.  
- يعملون كمرشدين.
- 6 They tell the hikers about their fascinating culture.  
- يخبرون المتجولين عن ثقافتهم المبهرة.
- 7 It takes around ten days to complete the trail.  
- يستغرق إكمال الممشى حوالي عشرة أيام.
- 8 I'm taking sunglasses to protect my eyes.  
- سوف آخذ نظارة شمس لحماية عيني.
- 9 I'm taking a scarf to protect my head and neck.  
- سوف آخذ كوفية لحماية رأسي وعنقي.
- 10 The sun can get very bright on the walk.  
- يمكن أن تسطع الشمس بشدة على الممشى.
- 11 How is it long?  
- كم تبلغ مسافته؟
- 12 Who looks after the trail?  
- من يهتم بالمشى؟
- 13 It's going to be such fun.  
- سيكون هذا ممتعاً.

1 Read the text. What is the Red Sea Mountain Trail?  
Answer the questions:

- اقرأ النص. ما هو ممشى البحر الأحمر الجبلي؟ أجب عن الأسئلة
- 1 Who looks after the trail? .....
  - 2 How long is it? .....

## Tapescript



## نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص



## Answer the questions

The Red Sea Mountain Trail was the first long - distance<sup>(1)</sup> hiking<sup>(2)</sup> trail to open in Egypt. It runs<sup>(3)</sup> for around 170 kms rough<sup>(4)</sup> the wonderful mountains near Hurghada.

- ١- ذو مسافة طويلة
- ٢- التجول
- ٣- يمتد
- ٤- خلال

## Lesson 3

It is a community<sup>(5)</sup> tourism project<sup>(6)</sup>. It helps<sup>(7)</sup> the local Maaza people<sup>(8)</sup> preserve<sup>(9)</sup> their culture<sup>(10)</sup> and history. The trail follows ancient trading<sup>(11)</sup> and hunting routes<sup>(12)</sup> in the Eastern Desert. The Maaza people used these routes for centuries<sup>(13)</sup>. They look after the trail carefully and work as guides<sup>(14)</sup>. They tell the hikers<sup>(15)</sup> about the ~~project~~<sup>(16)</sup> and history of this wonderful place. They also tell the hikers about their fascinating<sup>(17)</sup> culture. It takes around ten days to complete the trail.



- ٥- مجتمع
- ٦- مشروع سياحي
- ٧- يساعد
- ٨- شعب المعازة المحلي
- ٩- يحافظ على
- ١٠- ثقافة
- ١١- تجارة
- ١٢- طرق الصيد
- ١٣- قرون من الزمان
- ١٤- مرشدون
- ١٥- المتحولون
- ١٦- الجغرافيا
- ١٧- مبهر

## 2 Match the words to the photos. Then listen and check:

صل الكلمات بالصور. ثم استمع وتأكد.

a



1 hiking shoes

c



1

2 scarf

3 blanket

4 water bottle

5 hat and sunglasses

6 snacks

7 map

b



d



g



f





3 Work with a partner. You're going on the Red Sea Mountain Trail with your friends. Think about what you need to pack:

إعمل مع زميلك. ستذهب إلى ممشى البحر الأحمر الجبلي مع أصدقائك. فكر فيما تريد أن تأخذه معك.

clothes - a hat and sunglasses - hiking shoes - map - scarf  
snacks - a tent - warm sweater / blankets

4 Listen to these speakers going on the Red Sea Mountain Trail. Check (✓) what they are taking on the trail:

- استمع إلى المتحدثين الذاهبين إلى ممشى البحر الأحمر الجبلي. ضع علامة صح أمام ما سيأخذونه معهم إلى الممشى.

Sherif



Ramy



Lama



Nesma



hiking shoes

scarf

blanket

map

water bottles

hat

snacks

sunglasses

## Tapescript



نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص



Interviewer : Hi Sherif, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

Sherif : Hi! Well, I want to **protect**<sup>(1)</sup> my feet so I'm taking some **hiking shoes**<sup>(2)</sup>. I know there are a lot of hills and rocks so I don't want to **fall over**<sup>(3)</sup>! I'm also going to take some **snacks**<sup>(4)</sup> from home so I don't **get hungry**<sup>(5)</sup>.

- ١- يحمي
- ٢- حذاء التجول
- ٣- يسقط
- ٤- وجبات خفيفة
- ٥- يجوع

Interviewer : Hi Ramy, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

Ramy : My friend said it gets very hot on the trail in the places where there are no streams, so I'm taking a **hat**<sup>(6)</sup> for my head. I'm also going to take a **blanket**<sup>(7)</sup> in case I **get cold**<sup>(8)</sup> at night.

Interviewer : Hi Lama, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

Lama : Someone told me you can sometimes get sand in your eyes on the Red Sea Mountain Trail, so I'm taking a **scarf**<sup>(9)</sup> to protect my head and eyes. The other important thing for me is to take lots of **water bottles**<sup>(10)</sup> - I seem to drink more than other people so I want to be **prepared**<sup>(11)</sup>.

Interviewer : Hi Nesma, what are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

Nesma : I love checking the route so I'm taking a **map**<sup>(12)</sup>. And I'm going to take my cool **sunglasses**<sup>(13)</sup> too to protect my eyes. It's going to be such fun!

5 Listen again. Answer the questions:

استمع مرة أخرى. أجب عن الأسئلة.

- Who's worried about .....

1- the wind and sand? **Lama**.

2- the heat? .....

3- their feet? .....

6 Complete the sentences with some of the words from Exercise 4:

أكمل الجمل ببعض من الكلمات من تمرين ٤.

- I get thirsty when I hike, so I always take a **water bottle**.

- The sun can get very bright on the walk, so take .....to protect your eyes.

- Shaza is really good at reading the ..... to tell us where to go.

- There's a wind in the afternoon, so you should take a..... to protect your head and neck.

- ٦ - قبعة
- ٧ - بطانية
- ٨ - يشعر بالحر
- ٩ - وشاح
- ١٠ - زجاجات مياه
- ١١ - مستعد
- ١٢ - خريطة
- ١٣ - نظارة شمسية



# Activities



## 1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

1. Hatem is going on the Red Sea Mountain .....
2. He is taking ..... to protect his eyes.
3. He is taking ..... to protect his head.
4. He is taking a ..... in case he gets cold.

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

- 1 I'm taking a hat
- 2 Shaza is really good at
- 3 How is
- 4 I'm taking some snacks so
- 5 What are you taking

B

- a. it long?
- b. on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?
- c. to protect my head.
- d. reading the map.
- e. I don't get cold.
- f. I don't get hungry.

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. looks - trail - Who - after - the?
2. taking - to protect - I'm - my eyes - sunglasses.
3. carefully - after - look - trail - They - the.
4. sun - The - can - get - very - bright.

## 4 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

أكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

"The Red Sea Mountain Trail"

- 1- Who looks after the trail?
- 2- What are you taking on the Red Sea Mountain Trail ?



Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

## LESSON

# 4

## Word Building

### Vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



exciting

مثير

ocean

محيط

incredible

لا يصدق

during

أثناء

show

عرض

card

بطاقة

medicine

دواء

feel better

يشعر بتحسن

suitcase

حقيرة سفر

### Conjugation of Verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

pack

يحزم / يعبأ

packed

sing

يغنى

sang

look

ينظر

looked

give

يعطى

gave

weigh

يزن

weighed

ride

يركب (دراجة)

rode

stop

يتوقف

stopped

stand

يقف

stood

hear

يسمع

heard

### Study the following

- 1 My dad says that work is very stressful.
- 2 The card you gave me was very wonderful.
- 3 I ride my bike on the road.
- 4 She packed her suitcase.
- 5 I can see beautiful birds singing.
- 6 I can see a brown rabbit standing quietly.
- 7 The king is waiting to be crowned.
- 8 He's not looking at the sun.
- 9 The phone rang.
- 10 He heard a big bang.

- 1 - يقول والدي أن العمل مجهود جداً.
- 2 - البطاقة التي أعطيتها لي كانت رائعة.
- 3 - أركب دراجتي على الطريق.
- 4 - عبات حقيرتها.
- 5 - يمكنني رؤية طيور جميلة تغنى.
- 6 - يمكنني رؤية أرنب بني اللون يقف في هدوء.
- 7 - يرتدى الملك خاتماً كبيراً.
- 8 - لا ينظر إلى الشمس.
- 9 - رن الهاتف.
- 10 - سمع صوت فرقة شديدة.



## Word Endings

● نستخدم الأسماء لنشير إلى الأشخاص أو الأشياء أو الأماكن.

● هناك أسماء في اللغة الإنجليزية يضاف لها نهايات تحولها إلى صفات، من هذه النهايات (-ful) ونهايات تحولها إلى ظروف / أحوال، من هذه النهايات (-fully).

نهايات  
الكلمات  
-ful / -fully

● ارجع إلى شرح الصفات والظروف (Lesson 2) Adjectives and Adverbs

Noun	الاسم	Adjective	الصفة	Adverb	الظرف / الحال
beauty	الجمال	beautiful	جميل	beautifully	بشكل جميل

حذف حرف (l) وتحويله إلى (i) عند إضافة النهايات -ful / -fully للاسم.

Ex. The Red Sea Mountain Trail is very exciting and beautiful.

Ex. She sang beautifully during the show.

More Examples :

Noun	الاسم	Adjective	الصفة	Adverb	الظرف / الحال
help	المساعدة	helpful	متعاون / مفيد	helpfully	بشكل مساعد
care	العناية / الحرص	careful	حريص	carefully	بحرص / بعناية
thought	فكرة	thoughtful	عميق التفكير	thoughtfully	بتفكير
stress	الإجهاد	stressful	مجهد	stressfully	بإجهاد
meaning	المعنى	meaningful	مفهوم	meaningfully	بشكل مفهوم
wonder	إندهاش / تعجب	wonderful	عجيب	wonderfully	بشكل عجيب
joy	المرح	joyful	مفرح	joyfully	بمرح
hope	الأمل	hopeful	متفائل	hopefully	على أمل
pain	الأم	painful	شاق / مؤلم	painfully	بشقاء / بآلم

● هناك نهايات أخرى تحول الاسم إلى صفة مثل (y) ونهايات تحولها إلى ظرف / حال مثل (ly).

Noun	الاسم	Adjective	الصفة	Adverb	الظرف / الحال
hunger	الجوع	hungry	جائع	hungrily	بنهم / بجوع

● هناك أسماء لا تتغير عند تحويلها إلى صفات ونحوها إلى ظروف / أحوال بإضافة (ly).

Noun	الاسم	Adjective	الصفة	Adverb	الظرف / الحال
quiet	الهدوء	quiet	هادئ	quietly	بهدوء

1 Change the words from nouns to adjectives: غير الكلمات من أسماء إلى صفات.

- help **helpful**
- thought
- beauty
- stress
- care
- meaning

2 Complete the table with the correct part of speech:

أكمل الجدول بالجزء الصحيح من أجزاء الكلام.

Noun	Adjective	Adverb
wonder	1 <b>wonderful</b>	2
3	beautiful	4
joy	5	joyfully
hope	6	7
8	9	painfully

3 Complete the sentences with adjectives from Exercise 1:

أكمل الجمل بصفات من تمرين ١.

- My dad doesn't like working 12-hour days. He says it's very **stressful**.
- The card you gave me was very ..... Thank you.
- The medicine the doctor gave me was very ..... I feel better!
- I am very ..... when I ride my bike on the road.



1 Choose the correct option to complete the sentences a, b, or c:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. It was the most ..... bird I saw on the trail.

a wonder b wonderful c wonderfully

2. She packed her suitcase for the trip with a lot of .....

a care b careful c carefully

3. There is so much natural ..... in the Red Sea at Hurghada.

a beauty b beautiful c beautifully

4. The cat ate ..... from the bowl.

a hunger b hungry c hungrily

Work in pairs. Look at the picture and describe it together, using adjectives, adverbs, and nouns. Then write five sentences about the picture in your notebook:

إعمل مع زميلك. أنظر إلى الصورة وصفها مستخدماً الصفات والظروف والأسماء. ثم أكتب خمس جمل عن الصورة:

1. I can see beautiful birds singing.

2. I can see a brown rabbit standing quietly.

3. ....

4. ....

5. ....



## Pronunciation

The sound /n/ and the sound /ŋ/

يتشابه الصوتان في الشكل ولكنهما ينطقا بشكل مختلف.

ينطق الصوت /n/ كما في كلمة  
(nose) بحبس الهواء في الفم  
بمقدمة اللسان

ينطق الصوت /ŋ/ كما في كلمة  
sing / siŋ /  
بحبس الهواء بمؤخرة اللسان حيث يشبه  
هذا الصوت الفنة

/n/



nose أنف

sun الشمس

know يعرف

natural طبيعي

ton طن

/ŋ/

استمع إلى المفردات



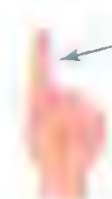
hiking التجول



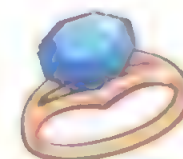
tongue اللسان



bang صوت فرقة



finger أصبع



ring خاتم / يرن



king ملك



## 1 Listen and say the /r/ words:

استمع وانطق الكلمات:

- 1- hiking 2- tongue 3- finger

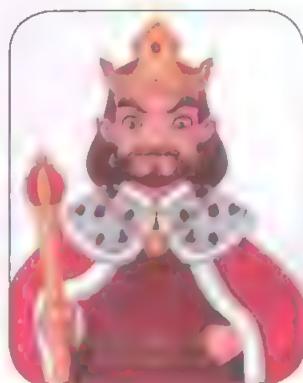
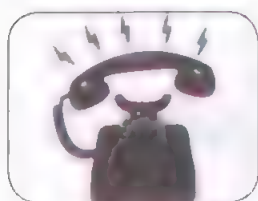
## 2 Listen and say the /n/ words:

استمع وانطق الكلمات:

- 1- nose 2- know 3- natural 4- ton

3 Listen and complete the poem with the words in the box.  
Then say:

استمع واكمل القصيدة بالكلمات التي في القائمة ثم قل:



bang - ring - ton - rang - king - sun

- 1 I can see a ..... king .....
- 2 He's wearing a big.....
- 3 He's not looking at the.....
- 4 He thinks it weighs a.....
- 5 Then the phone .....
- 6 And he heard a big..... !



## CLIL: Math

## Adding mixed numbers جمع الأعداد المختلطة

- العدد المختلط هو عدد مركب من عدد صحيح وكسر أصغر من واحد مثل :

$$6 \frac{2}{3} / 1 \frac{1}{5} / 2 \frac{3}{4}$$

- نستخدم الأعداد المختلطة في حياتنا اليومية طوال الوقت. على سبيل المثال:

Ex.: One nature trail is  $2 \frac{1}{2}$  kilometers long and another nature trail is $3 \frac{1}{2}$  kilometers long.- ممشى طبيعي طوله  $2 \frac{1}{2}$  كيلومتر وآخر طوله  $3 \frac{1}{2}$  كيلومتر.- How long are the nature trails in total?  $2 \frac{1}{2} + 3 \frac{1}{2} = ?$ 

- كم إجمالي طول الإثنين معاً؟

1- To add these together, add the whole numbers first:  $2 + 3 = 5$ .

- لكي نجمع الطولين معاً، إجمع الأعداد الصحيحة أولاً.

2- Next, add the fractions together:  $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{2}{2} = 1$ 

- بعد ذلك، إجمع الأعداد الكسرية معاً.

3- Add this to the whole number 5 and the total is 6.

- أجمع الناتج على العدد الصحيح 5 ويكون الإجمالي 6.

## 1 Circle the correct answer:

ضع دائرة على الاجابة الصحيحة :

1  $2 \frac{1}{5} + 3 \frac{3}{5} = 5 \frac{4}{5}$  or  $5 \frac{3}{5}$  2  $3 \frac{4}{6} + 5 \frac{1}{6} = 8 \frac{5}{6}$  or  $8 \frac{7}{8}$

3  $7 \frac{1}{12} + 8 \frac{1}{12} = 15 \frac{2}{12}$  or  $15 \frac{1}{12}$  4  $4 \frac{1}{8} + 1 \frac{2}{8} = 5 \frac{3}{8}$  or  $5 \frac{3}{16}$

## 2 Add the mixed numbers:

إجمع الأعداد المختلطة :

1  $1 \frac{1}{6} + 1 \frac{1}{6} =$  2  $3 \frac{1}{6} + 2 \frac{2}{6} =$

## 3 Answer the word problem:

أجب عن المسألة الكلامية :

- Nashwa walks for  $2 \frac{3}{10}$  kms. She stops for a drink and then walks for another $1 \frac{4}{10}$  kms. How far has Nashwa walked in total?- تسير نشوى لمسافة  $2 \frac{3}{10}$  كيلومتر. تتوقف لتناول مشروب ثم تسير لمسافة  $1 \frac{4}{10}$  كيلومتر.

$$2 \frac{3}{10} + 1 \frac{4}{10} =$$

- كم المسافة التي تمشيها نشوى في المجموع؟



# Activities



## 1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

1. Yesterday was .....
2. Amal didn't go to .....
3. Amal saw ..... singing on the tree.
4. Amal saw a brown rabbit standing .....

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>A</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 The king is wearing</li> <li>2 He isn't looking</li> <li>3 The phone</li> <li>4 My dad says that work</li> <li>5 The card you gave me was</li> </ol> | <p><b>B</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. at the sun.</li> <li>b. rang.</li> <li>c. is very stressful.</li> <li>d. very wonderful.</li> <li>e. a big bang.</li> <li>f. a big ring.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. ride - I - bike - the - my - on - road.
2. heard - big - He - a - bang.
3. see - a - you - rabbit - brown - Can?
4. packed - She - suitcase - the.

## 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتى:

- 1- what can you see
- 2- i can see birds singing

Help your child deal with such questions. ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الاسئلة.

## LESSONS

# 5&6

## Writing

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



palm tree  
النخيل



cactus  
نبات الصبار



desert snail  
حلزون الصحراء



tamarisk plant  
نبات شجرة الطرفاء



jerboa  
حيوان الجربوع

### Other words

### كلمات اخرى

free	غير مشغول / حر
Sure!	بالتأكيد!
Great.	عظيم.
environment	البيئة
plan	خطة
awesome	رائع
emoji	رمز تعبيرى
list	قائمة
science	العلوم

the movies	السينما
tonight	الليلة
corner	ناصية / ركن
café	مقهى
milkshake	مخفوق الحليب
value	قيمة / أهمية
space	مساحة
correctly	بشكل صحيح
scientist	عالم

### Conjugation of verbs

#### Regular verbs

#### أفعال منتظمة

#### Irregular verbs

#### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	ماضى	Present	ماضى
suggest	يقترح	meet	يقابل
include	يشمل	bring	يحضر
pick..up	يوصل... بالسيارة	learn	يتعلم
enjoy	يستمتع بـ		
		met	
		brought	
		learnt / learned	
suggested			
included			
picked..up			
enjoyed			



1

Talking  
about plans  
التحدث عن  
الخطط

السؤال عن خطط شخص ما تستخدم العبارات الآتية:

- Are you free on the weekend?

هل أنت غير مشغول في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع؟

والرد نقول:

- Yes, I'm. / I'm free.

نعم، أنا كذلك / أنا غير مشغول.

- No, I'm not. / I'm busy.

لا، لست كذلك / أنا مشغول.

- لتقديم الاقتراحات نستخدم الأسئلة والعبارات الآتية:

- How about / What about + v-ing.....?

ماذا عن ... ؟ / ما رأيك في ... ؟

- Let's + inf. .... دعنا / هيا بنا

- Should we + inf. .... هل نفعّل ... ؟

- Do you want to + inf. .... هل تريد أن ... ؟

Ex.: How about / What about meeting up?

- ما رأيك في أن نتقابل؟

Ex.: Let's meet at 3.

- دعنا نتقابل في الثالثة.

Ex.: Should we pick you up at 7?

هل نقلك بالسيارة في الساعة؟

Ex.: Do you want to get a milkshake later?

هل تريد تناول مخفوق الحليب فيما بعد؟

للرد بالإيجاب على الاقتراحات نستخدم العبارات الآتية:

- That sounds like fun.

يبدو ممتعاً.

- That sounds great / awesome.

يبدو رائعاً.

- Cool! / Great! / Awesome!

رائع.

- Good idea!

فكرة جيدة!

3

Responding to  
suggestions  
الرد على  
الاقتراحات

## Study the following

1 What should we do?

ماذا يجب أن نفعّل؟

2 Do you want to come?

هل تود أن تأتي؟

3 How about me coming to your house?

ما رأيك في أن آتي إلى منزلك؟

4 What should I bring?

ماذا علي أن أحضر؟

5 Let's meet on Friday at 4 pm.

دعنا نتقابل يوم الجمعة في الرابعة مساءً.

6 How about going to the movies tonight?

ما رأيك في الذهاب إلى السينما الليلة؟

7 How are things?

كيف تسير الأمور؟

8 See you there!

أراك هناك.

9 Fareeda wants to be a scientist.

فريدة تريد أن تكون عالمة.

10 Will you have a play area?

هل سيكون لديكم منطقة للعب؟

1 Read the text message conversation. Answer the questions:

اقرأ الحوار في الرسالة النصية. أجب عن الأسئلة:

استمع إلى النص



Hi Malak! Are you (1) on the weekend?

I'm good thanks. Sure!  
What should we do?

My mom and dad want to do a (2). Do you want to come?

Yes, that sounds like fun!

Great, should we (3)? We don't want to go when it's too hot.

How about me coming to your house?

Good idea!

What should I (4)?

Hiking shoes, water,  
and a (5).

OK!

Great! Let's meet on Friday at 4 pm?

Can't wait!



## What's missing?

1- غير مشغول

2- تجول في الصحراء

3- نوصلك بالسيارة

4- أحضر

5- حقيبة



## 2 Complete the set phrases to use for text messages:

أكمل العبارات لاستخدامها في الرسالة النصية ،

1 How about ..... (go) to the movies tonight?

2 Should we .....(pick) you up at 7?

3 That .....(sound) like fun.

## 3 Put the sentences in order to make a text message conversation:

رتب الجمل لعمل رسالة نصية ،

- Hi Wael, how are things?

- At the corner café? See you there!

- Do you want to get a milkshake later?

- That sounds awesome, what time?

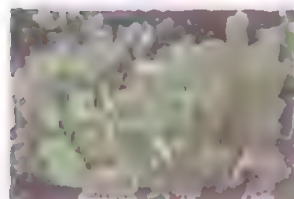
- Great! How are you?

- About 5? Where?

- Yes, see you later!

## 4 Check (✓) what you can see on your nature trail:

ضع علامة (✓) أمام ما يمكنك رؤيته في ممشي طبيعي ،



cactus



palm tree



desert snail



tamarisk plant



jerboa



# Activities

## 1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

1. I have a ..... to the Red Sea.

2. I ..... my suitcase carefully.

3. I am taking my ..... shoes.

4. It will be a ..... trip.

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

1 Are you free

2 Let's meet on

3 Yes, Malak

4 What should

5 Fareeda wants

a. is free.

b. to be a scientist.

c. idea!

d. on the weekend?

e. Friday

f. I bring?

## 3 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. should - do - What - we?

2. cactus - can - I - see - a.

3. be - Fareeda - a - to - scientist - wants.

4. should - What - bring - I?

## 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1- do you want to come

2- i can see a tamarisk plant





# Review



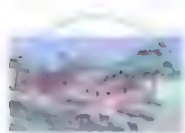
## Key vocabulary



leaf  
ورقة شجر



city  
مدينة



village  
قرية



tree  
شجرة



plant  
نبات



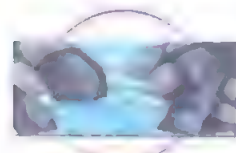
grass  
عشب / حشائش



hill  
تل



rock  
صخرة



stream  
جدول / مائي مجرى



sunglasses  
نظارة شمس



hiking  
التجول (السير  
لمسافات طويلة)



hiking shoes  
حذاء التجول



scarf  
كوفية / وشاح



blanket  
بطانية



water bottle  
زجاجة مياه



hat  
قبعة



warm sweater  
سترة لحفظ الدفء



tent  
خيمة



clothes  
ملابس



snacks  
وجبات خفيفة



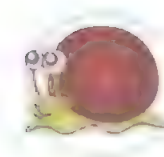
map  
خريطة



palm tree  
النخيل



cactus  
نبات الصبار



desert snail  
حلزون الصحراء



tamarisk plant  
نبات شجرة الطرفاء



jerboa  
حيوان الجربوع

go on a trail (درب) يذهب للسير في ممشى  
date تاريخ اليوم  
sounds like fun يبدو ممتعاً  
fascinating مبهّر / فائق  
mountain trail ممشى (ممر) جبلي  
route طريق / مسار

incredible لا يصدق  
show عرض  
medicine دواء  
feel better يشعر بتحسن  
suitcase حقيبة سفر

## More words

feeling ملمس / إحساس  
trunk جذع / ساق (شجرة)  
hike التجول (السير لمسافات طويلة)  
diver غطاس  
invitation دعوة  
tortoise سلحفاة برية  
race سباق  
runner عداء  
How's life? كيف تصير الامور؟  
free غير مشغول / حر  
science العلوم  
the movies السينما  
corner ناصية / ركن  
milkshake مخفوق الحليب

long-distance ذو مسافة طويلة  
tourism project مشروع سياحي  
community مجتمع  
trading التجارة  
hunting الصيد  
century قرن (١٠٠ عام)  
hiker رحالة / متجول  
get hungry يجوع  
get thirsty يعطش  
get cold يشعر بالبرد  
fall over يسقط  
correctly بشكل صحيح  
scientist عالم

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماض

climb يتسلق  
dive يغطس  
accept يقبل  
invite يدعو

climbed  
dived  
accepted  
invited

### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماض

have / has يمتلك  
swim يسبح  
sing يغني  
drive يقود (سيارة)

had  
swam  
sang  
drove



guess	يخمن	guessed	win	بفوز	won
preserve	يحافظ على	preserved	take	يستغرق / يأخذ	took
follow	يتبع (مسار)	followed	get	يصبح	got
hike	يتجول	hiked	meet	يقابل	met
protect	يحمي	protected	bring	يحضر	brought
suggest	يقترح	suggested			
pick..up	يوصل... بالسيارة	picked..up			

## Grammar

## قواعد لغوية

- تكون الأسماء الجمع من الأسماء المفردة كالآتي:

house	→	houses	village	→	villages
tree	→	trees	rock	→	rocks

٢- بإضافة **es** لآخر الاسم إذا انتهى بالحروف الآتية:

**s - ss - sh - ch - x - o**

grass	→	grasses	branch	→	branches
-------	---	---------	--------	---	----------

٣- بإضافة **ies** إذا انتهى الاسم بحرف **y** وكان قبله حرف ساكن حيث يحذف **y**

- أما إذا سبق حرف **y** حرف متحرك لا يحذف ويضاف **s** فقط.

city	+ حرف ساكن	→	cities	boy	+ حرف متحرك	→	boys
------	------------	---	--------	-----	-------------	---	------

٤- بإضافة **ves** لآخر الاسم إذا انتهى بـ **fe / f** حيث تحذف كما يلي:

leaf	→	leaves
------	---	--------

٥ - هناك أسماء شاذة لا تتبع القاعدة ولها جمع خاص بها تحفظ كما هي:

tooth	→	teeth	mouse	→	mice
-------	---	-------	-------	---	------

2

الصفات  
Adjectives

- I saw a poor man.

Ex. The girl is lazy.

تستخدم الأحوال لوصف الفعل وتوضح لنا كيف وقع الفعل.

تتكون الأحوال بإضافة **ly** آخر الصفة.

الظروف /  
الأحوال  
Adverbs

Ex. This girl speaks politely.

إذا انتهت الصفة بـ **(y)** تحذف ويضاف مكانها **(ily)**.

Ex. They play happily.

## Word Endings

4

نهايات  
الكلمات  
-ful / -fully

هناك أسماء في اللغة الإنجليزية يضاف لها نهايات تحولها إلى صفات، من هذه النهايات **(-ful)** ونهايات تحولها إلى ظروف / أحوال، من هذه النهايات **(-fully)**

Noun	الاسم	Adjective	الصفة	Adverb	الظرف / الحال
beauty	الجمال	beautiful	جميل	beautifully	بشكل جميل
help	المساعدة	helpful	متعاون مفيد	helpfully	بشكل مساعد
care	العناية / الحرص	careful	حريص	carefully	بحرص / بعناية
thought	فكرة	thoughtful	عميق التفكير	thoughtfully	بتفكير
stress	الإجهاد	stressful	مجهّد	stressfully	بإجهاد

حذف حرف **(y)** وتحويله إلى **(i)** عند إضافة النهايات **-ful / -fully** للاسم beauty



## Pronunciation

The sound /v/ and the sound /n/

-يتشابه الصوتان في الشكل ولكنهما ينطقا بشكل مختلف.

/n/	nose	أنف	sun	الشمس	know	يعرف
					natural	طبيعي
					to	طن

/n/	hiking	التجول	to	اللسان	bang	صوت فرقعة
	finger	أصبع	ring	خاتم / يرن	rang	رن
					king	ملك



Write a paragraph of Forty  
(40) words

## Answers to Paragraphs

## Unit 11

## The Red Sea Mountain Trail

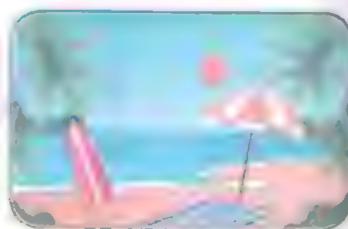
- 1 The Red Sea Mountain Trail is near Hurghada. It's a long - distance hiking trail. It is a community tourism project. I am going there next week. I'm taking hiking shoes, some snacks, a hat and sunglasses.



## Activity Unit 11

## "A trip to the Red Sea"

- 2 Our school had a trip to the Red Sea last week. My friends and I went on the trip. I took my new camera with me. We took wonderful photos there. My friend Shady brought his beach ball. We swam and played in the water. It was a nice trip.



## A- Listening

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: استمع وأختار:

1. Egypt has some famous ..... Cairo, Alexandria and Hurghada.

(towns - villages - cities)

2. The weather in Hurghada is .....

(cold - warm - hot)

## B. Language Functions

- 2 Read and complete the dialog with the words below: أقرأ وأكمل:

trail - last - do

A : Where did you go ..... weekend?

B : I went to Wadi Degla. ....

A : What did you ..... there?

B : I went on a .....

## C- Reading Comprehension

- 3 Read and choose the correct answer: أقرأ واختار الإجابة الصحيحة:

I'm Hussein. I'm in primary five. My father is a teacher. My mother is a doctor. I'm happy because my father always gives me presents. Last month, we went to the Red Sea. We visited the Red Sea Mountain Trail. It is the first long - distance hiking to open in Egypt. It is a community tourism project. It's a wonderful place.

1. Hussein is in primary ..... (five - three - four)

2. Hussein's father is a ..... (vet - teacher - doctor)

3. Last month, they went to ..... (Aswan - Alexandria - the Red Sea)

4. They visited the Red Sea ..... Trail. (park - Mountain - garden)

5. It's a ..... place. (wonderful - bad - noisy)



## D. Vocabulary and Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة

1. I saw a ..... bird on the tree.

- a wonder      b wonderful      c wonderfully

2. He heard a big .....

- a rang      b sang      c bang

3. The Red Sea Mountain Trail is very exciting and .....

- a beauty      b beautifully      c beautiful

4. Wadi Degla is cool because you can see a lot of .....

- a animals      b skies      c clothes

5. A ..... is a very tall plant with branches.

- a river      b tree      c lake

## E. The Reader

5 Choose the correct answer :

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The things in the rocks look like .....

- a bones      b shoes      c trees

2. Uncle Youssef looks at Ramy's rocks .....

- a badly      b sadly      c carefully

## F. Writing

6 Write a short paragraph of Four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن:

## The nature trail trip



## Activity

ON UNIT

11

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

1 Amira is going to Hurghada.

2 Ola is going to Alexandria.

3 Amira wants to go on a trip with her friends.

4 Amira is taking some drinks.

2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

1. Omar is a ..... boy.

2. Omar is a good .....

3. His dad always tells him to be .....

4. Omar won a swimming ..... last year.

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

1 I love the feeling

2 What should

3 I know you walk

4 See you

5 Who looks

a. quickly and swim well.

b. later!

c. of green grass.

d. after the trail?

e. they going?

f. I do?

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Every week, Tarek and his family go to the beach. They live far from the beach. Tarek's mother says, "It's fun in the beach, but it takes too much time to get there and back!"

Tarek and his sister and brother are very sad. They want to go to the beach. One day Tarek's parents come to talk with the kids. They say, "We need to live near the beach!" Tarek and his sister and brother are very happy! Now they live near the beach. They go to the beach every day!



## Unit 11 Dating out with friends

A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tarek and his family go to the beach every .....  
☐ a year ☐ b week ☐ c month ☐ d day
2. The word "parents" means .....  
☐ a brother and sister ☐ b uncle and aunt  
☐ c father and mother ☐ d grandparents

B- Answer the following questions:

3. How many persons are there in Tarek's family?

4. Why are the kids happy?

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. dad - swimmer - good - a - Is - your?

2. beautifully - girl - She - sings.

3. on - meet - at - Friday - 4 pm - Let's.

4. things - How - are?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. I want to go on a trail

2. when are they meeting

7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

"A trip to the Red Sea"

beach - swim



Theme

4

## Being responsible

Unit

12

## Vacations

العطلات



### Objectives of the Unit أهداف الوحدة

1. Listen, read, research, and write about vacations  
- يستمع الطالب ويقرأ ويجري بحثاً ويكتب عن العطلات.
2. Think about environmental responsibility.  
- يفكر الطالب في المسؤولية البيئية.
3. Learn about natural and man-made resources.  
- يتعلم الطالب عن الموارد الطبيعية والموارد التي من صنع الإنسان.
4. Practice using prepositions of time.  
- يتدرب الطالب على استخدام حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت.
5. Listen to a conversation.  
- يستمع الطالب إلى محادثة.
6. Learn about different types of triangles.  
- يتعلم الطالب عن الأنواع المختلفة من المثلثات.
7. Read and say words with the " " sound.  
- يقرأ الطالب ويقول كلمات بها صوت " ".
8. Think about my perfect vacation.  
- يفكر الطالب في عطلة مثالية.
9. Write a diary entry for my best day on vacation.  
- يكتب الطالب تدوينة يومية عن أفضل يوم في العطلة.
10. Write an ad for a vacation destination.  
- يكتب الطالب إعلاناً عن جهة لقضاء العطلة.





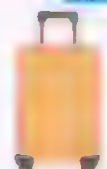
# A world trip

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



hotel  
فندق



suitcase  
حقيرة سفر



swimming pool  
حمام سباحة



high-rise building  
ناطحة سحاب



theme park  
ملاهي



ticket  
تذكرة



beach  
شاطيء



camera  
كاميرا



city  
مدينة



museum  
متحف



airport  
مطار



sunglasses  
نظارة شممس



tourist  
سائح



passport  
جواز سفر

## Other words



luckily  
Singapore  
flight  
vacation  
footprints  
daughter  
husband  
gardens

لحسن الحظ  
سنغافورة  
رحلة جوية  
إجازة / عطلة  
آثار القدم  
ابنة  
زوج  
منطقة حدائق

cloud  
degree  
view  
island  
son  
floor  
vanilla

بصوت عال  
درجة الحرارة  
منظر  
جزيرة  
ابن  
طابق / دور في مبنى  
فانيليا

## Important Phrases

## عبارات مهمة

a business trip

رحلة عمل

a boat trip

رحلة (نزهة) بالقارب

from all around the world

من جميع أنحاء العالم

in the middle of

في منتصف

by the Bay

بحوار الخليج

a really special place

مكان مميز جداً

## Adjectives

## الصفات

wonderful / lovely

رائع

comfortable

مريح

busy

مزدحم

huge

صخم

## Conjugation of verbs

## تحويل الأفعال

### Regular verbs

### أفعال منتظمة

### Irregular verbs

### أفعال غير منتظمة

#### Present

#### مضارع

#### Past

#### ماضي

arrive

يصل

arrived

وصل

visit

يزور

visited

زار

relax

يستريح

relaxed

استراح

pack

يحزم (حقائب)

packed

أحزم

#### Present

#### مضارع

#### Past

#### ماضي

spend

يقضي (وقت)

spent

قضى

fly

يطير / يسافر جوا

flew

طار

take photos

يلتقط صور

took photos

ألتقط صوراً

leave

يغادر

left

غادر

sleep

ينام

slept

نام

## Study the following

1 They are on a business trip traveling around the world.

- إنهم مسافرون حول العالم في رحلة عمل.

2 Luckily, we've got a lovely hotel room.

- لحسن الحظ حصلنا على غرفة رائعة في فندق.

3 The view is beautiful and we can see the beach.

- المنظر جميل ويمكننا أن نرى الشاطئ.

4 There's a huge swimming pool on the roof of the hotel!

- يوجد حمام سباحة ضخم على سطح الفندق.

5 It didn't take long to get through the airport when we arrived.

- لم نستغرق الكثير من الوقت لكي نمر من المطار عندما وصلنا.

6 We got our suitcases straight away.

- حصلنا على حقائب السفر فوراً.

7 There are lots of high-rise buildings.

- يوجد الكثير من ناطحات السحاب.

8 There are many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax.

- يوجد الكثير من الحدائق والأشجار لكي نجلس تحتها ونستريح.

9 We visited the museum of ice cream!

- زرنا متحف المثلجات.

10 I hope you are all well.

- أتمنى أن تكونوا جميعاً بخير.

11 Now I have to find our passports and pack our suitcases again!

- الآن يجب أن أجد تذاكري وجواز سفري وأحزم حقائبي مرة أخرى.



## 1 Listen and read.

استمع وأقرأ.

Where are Uncle Hany and Aunt Nadia now?

Today Mom received an email from her sister Nadia, and her husband Hany. They are on a business trip traveling around the world. Nadia and Hany were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. Mom is reading the email aloud to her daughter Rana and her son Ali.



Singapore City

Tapescript

نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص:



From: Nadiax@mail.com

Subject: My trip

To: Samiix@mail.com

Dear Samia,

Hello to you all from **Singapore**<sup>(1)</sup>! It's hot here - about 36 **degrees**<sup>(2)</sup>. Luckily, we've got a lovely **hotel**<sup>(3)</sup> room. We're on the 42<sup>nd</sup> floor. The view is beautiful and we can see the beach. There's a huge **swimming pool**<sup>(4)</sup> on the roof of the hotel! Can you believe it? The **flight**<sup>(5)</sup> from India took about six hours, but it was **comfortable**<sup>(6)</sup> and we both slept. It didn't take long to **get through**<sup>(7)</sup> the airport when we arrived - we got our **suitcases**<sup>(8)</sup> straight away.

Singapore is a wonderful city. There are lots of **high-rise buildings**<sup>(9)</sup>, but there are also many parks, gardens, and trees to sit under and relax. The Gardens by the **Bay**<sup>(10)</sup> is a really special place where there are flowers and plants from all around the world. We spent a lot of time there. You really forget that you're **in the middle**<sup>(11)</sup> of a busy city.

Yesterday, we went on a boat trip with some other tourists to an island. There is a **theme park**<sup>(12)</sup>. It was so much fun! After that, we visited the **museum**<sup>(13)</sup> of ice cream! I had a 'Queen Bee' ice cream which is vanilla and honey with chocolate. It was great!

I hope you are all well. We will fly to **Japan**<sup>(14)</sup> tomorrow and I'll send you another email when we arrive. Now I have to find our **tickets**<sup>(15)</sup> and **passports**<sup>(16)</sup> and **pack**<sup>(17)</sup> our suitcases again!

Love, Nadia

- ١- دولة سنغافورة
- ٢- درجات حرارة
- ٣- فندق
- ٤- حمام سباحة
- ٥- رحلة جوية
- ٦- مريح
- ٧- يمر عبر
- ٨- حقائب سفر
- ٩- ناطحات سحاب
- ١٠- خليج
- ١١- في منتصف
- ١٢- ملاهى
- ١٣- متحف
- ١٤- دولة اليابان
- ١٥- تذاكر
- ١٦- جوازات سفر
- ١٧- يحزم (حقائب)

## 2 Listen again. Check (✓) the places that Nadia and Hany visited in Singapore.

استمع مرة أخرى. ضع علامة (✓) أمام الأماكن التي زارتها نادية وهاني في سنغافورة.

1- a swimming pool ☐2- an airport ☐3- a theme park ☐4- an ice cream museum ☐5- a zoo ☐6- a park ☐

## 3 Read again. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F). Correct the false sentences in your notebook:

اقرأ مرة أخرى. حدد إن كانت الجملة صحيحة أم خاطئة. صحح الجملة الخاطئة في كراسك.

1- Nadia and Hany are staying at a friend's house.

2- They flew from Cairo.

3- They thought the Gardens by the Bay was lovely.

4- Yesterday they went to a museum.

## 4 Listen and say. Then write:

استمع وقل. ثم اكتب:

hotel - passport - swimming pool - suitcase - ticket - tourist



1



2



3



4



5



6

## 5 Read. Are these things you take on vacation, or places you go on vacation? Write them on the correct list:

اقرأ. هل هذه الأشياء التي تأخذها معك في إجازة؟ أم هي أماكن تذهب إليها في إجازة؟ اكتبهم في المكان الصحيح.

beach - camera - city - hotel - museum - passport - suitcase - sunglasses  
swimming pool - theme park - ticket

Things you take on vacation أشياء تأخذها معك في إجازة	Places you go on vacation أماكن تذهب إليها في إجازة
suitcase	passport



# Activities



## 1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل:

- Osama ..... to Dubai last month.
- There are many ..... buildings.
- There was a big ..... pool on the roof of the hotel.
- Osama went on rides at the theme .....

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

B

- |                             |                                    |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 We got our suitcases      | ○ a. museum of ice cream!          |
| 2 The view is beautiful and | ○ b. of high-rise buildings.       |
| 3 We visited the            | ○ c. we can see the beach.         |
| 4 Luckily, we've got        | ○ d. straight away at the airport. |
| 5 There are lots            | ○ e. a lovely hotel room.          |
|                             | ○ f. Japan.                        |

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. you - well - I - are - all - hope.

2. our tickets - have to - and - I - find - passports.

3. a boat - went - trip - We - on.

4. you - Can - it - believe?

## 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. do Muhammad and mustafa go to Singapore?

2. we will fly to Japan tomorrow

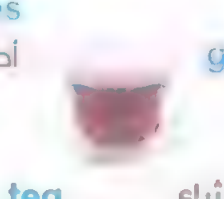
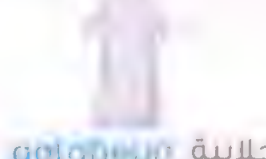
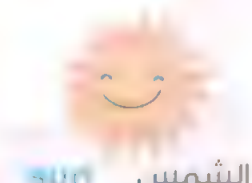
## LESSON

# 2

## CLIL: Science

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:





## Other words كلمات أخرى

nature  
banks  
fertile

الطبيعة  
ضفاف  
خصب

humans  
material  
lucky

البشر  
مادة خام  
محظوظ

## Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

boil يغلي  
harvest يحصد

boiled  
harvested

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

wake up يستيقظ  
put on يرتدي  
sell يبيع  
shine تسطع (الشمس)

woke up  
put on  
sold  
shone

## Study the following

1 Trees and stone, are examples of natural resources.

- الشجر والحجارة هي أمثلة على الموارد الطبيعية.

2 Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are examples of man-made resources.

- الزجاجات البلاستيكية والملابس القطنية هي أمثلة على موارد من صنع الإنسان.

3 He wakes up and puts on his galabeya and leather shoes.

- يستيقظ ويرتدي الجلابية والحذاء المصنوع من الجلد.

4 He boils some water for tea.

- يغلي بعض الماء من أجل الشاي.

5 The sun will shine most days.

- ستكون الشمس ساطعة معظم الأيام.

6 He lives on the fertile banks of the Nile.

- يسكن على ضفاف النيل الخصبة.

7 He can use the water for his crops.

- يستطيع استخدام الماء من أجل محاصيله.

8 Today, Farouk is harvesting the grain.

- يجمع فاروق الحبوب اليوم.

9 Reem is going on vacation.

- ستذهب ريم في إجازة.

10 She is packing her suitcase.

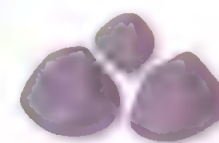
- هي تعزم حقيبة السفر الخاصة بها.

1 Read. Then look at the resources. Are they natural (N) or man-made (M)?

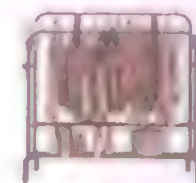
اقرأ ثم انظر إلى الموارد. هل هي طبيعية أم من صنع الإنسان؟

## Resources

Natural resources are materials or things we can find in nature. Trees and stone are examples of natural resources.



Man-made resources are materials or things that humans have made. Plastic bottles and cotton clothes are examples of man-made resources.



2 Think. Write one more natural resource and one more man-made resource:

فكر. اكتب موردًا طبيعيًا آخر وموردًا من صنع الإنسان.

Natural:

Man-made:

Natural resources  
موارد طبيعية

are materials or things we can find in nature.

Man-made resources  
موارد من صنع الإنسان

are materials or things that humans have made.



- 3 Read about Farouk. The underlined words are all resources. Put them into the correct column in the table below:

اقرأ عن فاروق. الكلمات التي تحتها خط كلها موارد. ضعهم في العمود الصحيح في الجدول بالأسفل.

استمع إلى النص:

Farouk is a farmer in Aswan. Every morning, he wakes up and puts on his galabeya and leather shoes. He boils some water for tea and eats some bread and fruit.

Because Farouk lives in Aswan, he knows that the sun will shine most days. He is lucky that he lives on the fertile banks of the Nile so that he can use the water for his crops.

Today, Farouk is harvesting the grain, putting it into baskets made from reeds, and taking it to sell at the market.



Natural resources	Man-made resources
	galabeya

- 4 Now read about Reem. Underline the natural resources that she uses. Then circle the man-made resources that she uses:

الآن اقرأ عن ريم. ضع خطاً تحت الموارد الطبيعية التي تستخدمها. ثم ضع دائرة حول الموارد من صنع الإنسان التي تستخدمها.

استمع إلى النص:

Reem is going on vacation<sup>(1)</sup>. She is traveling to Canada by plane.

Today, he is packing<sup>(2)</sup> her suitcase. She knows that there is often rain in Canada, so she is taking her umbrella. It can also be cold there, so she is packing a sweater.

Reem loves swimming and asked her friend in Canada if there was a place<sup>(3)</sup> she could swim. Her friend said she didn't live near the sea, but she could swim in a river or a lake if she wanted to.



Arabic Meaning

- ١- إجازة  
٢- تفرغ (تعبئة)  
٣- مكان

## Activities

- 1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><b>A</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 She is traveling to</li> <li>2 Natural resources are</li> <li>3 There is often rain in Canada</li> <li>4 The sun will</li> <li>5 Cotton clothes are examples</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. of man-made resources.</li> <li>b. Canada by plane.</li> <li>c. shine most days.</li> <li>d. materials or things we can find in nature.</li> <li>e. so she is taking her umbrella.</li> <li>f. of natural resources.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

- 2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Mariam. I'm going on vacation. I'm traveling to Alexandria by train. I'm going there with my family. We will go to the beach. I want to live near the sea. I love swimming, so I can swim in the sea. I can make sandcastles, too. Now I'm packing my things to go there. I think we will have a nice time.

- A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mariam is going to Alexandria by .....  
a car      b plane      c train      d bus
2. They will go to the .....  
a school      b beach      c library      d airport

- B- Answer the following questions:

3. What does Mariam love? .....
4. What can Mariam make? .....

- 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملًا صحيحة:

1. the Nile - lives - on - Moazz.
2. Canada - is - plane - She - by - traveling to.
3. for tea - water - boils - He - some.
4. natural - examples of - Trees - resources - are.

- 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1- amr is harvesting his crops .....
- 2- is Reem packing her suitcase .....



## A special trip

## Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات



check in	يسجل وصوله للفندق
traditional	تقليدي
daytrip	رحلة نهائية (في النهار)
diary	مفكرة يومية

diary entry	تدوينة في المفكرة اليومية
wander	يتجول
handicrafts / crafts	مصنوعات بدوية
stalls	أكشاك

## Other words

leaflet	منشور / كراسة دعائية
tour	جولة
mud	وحل / طين
exploring	استكشاف
culture	حضارة / ثقافة
trading center	مركز تجاري
rug	سجادة
on the way	في الطريق
idea	فكرة
home	وطن
citadel	قلعة
The Roman Amphitheater	المدراج الروماني

meeting	مقابلة
skin	جلد
chance	فرصة
destination	جهة الوصول
midnight	منتصف الليل
tour guide	مرشد سياحي
archaeological	أثري
arts and crafts	فنون وحرف
museum	متحف
Jordan	الأردن
Jordanian	أردني
the Dead Sea	البحر الميت

## Conjugation of verbs

صريف الافعال

## Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

## Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ	Present مضارع	Past ماضٍ
check in يصل للفندق	checked in	buy يشتري	bought
head out يتوجه إلى	headed out	drive يقود (سيارة)	drove
float يطفو	floated	write down يسجل / يدون	wrote down
walk around يتجول في	walked around	go back يعود	went back
discover يكتشف	discovered		

## Study the following

- 1 Enjoy some free time in the city. - استمتع ببعض وقت الفراغ في المدينة.
- 2 Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. - اليوم نستمع بجولة في عمان.
- 3 Today we head out of the city for a daytrip. - اليوم نتوجه إلى خارج المدينة في رحلة نهائية.
- 4 You will find lots of local Jordanian culture. - ستجد الكثير من الثقافة الأردنية المحلية.
- 5 No visit to Jordan is complete without a trip to the Dead Sea. - لا تكتمل زيارة الأردن بدون رحلة إلى البحر الميت.
- 6 There is so much salt in this sea. - يوجد الكثير جدا من الملح في هذا البحر.
- 7 We leave at 11 am to drive three hours back to Amman. - نغادر الساعة ١١ صباحا لنقود سيارة لمدة ٣ ساعات عائدين إلى عمان.
- 8 We will stop on the way for lunch. - سنتوقف في الطريق للغداء.
- 9 It only took an hour to reach our destination. - استغرقت ساعة فقط للوصول لوجهتنا.
- 10 Several people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts from the stalls. - اشترى الكثير من الناس مصنوعات يدوية أردنية تقليدية من الأكشاك.
- 11 Today was the best day ever! - كان اليوم أفضل يوم على الإطلاق.
- 12 We had the chance to wander through the streets. - اتاحت لنا الفرصة وتجولنا خلال الشوارع.
- 13 There is so much salt in the sea that you are able to float on the water. - يوجد ملح كثير جدًا في البحر يمكنك من الطفو على الماء.

## Definitions

## تعريفات

A diary مفكرة يومية is a book in which you write down things that happen to you each day.

A diary entry تدوينة في المفكرة is a piece of writing in a diary.



## Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

● نستخدم حرف الجر **on** قبل أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة:

- I go swimming **on** Mondays.
- I am having a party **on** my birthday.
- I was born **on** July 6<sup>th</sup>, 2010.

1

on

● نستخدم حرف الجر **at** قبل الوقت وبعض العبارات:

- Our flight lands **at** 8 pm.
- We play basketball **at** lunchtime / **at** night.
- **at** midnight

2

at

● نستخدم حرف الجر **in** قبل الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وأيضا أوقات اليوم:

- We visit our cousins **in** June.
- I was born **in** 2010.
- They arrived **in** the morning.
- **in** the afternoon / evening

3

in

● لاحظ إذا جاء رقم بعد الشهر نستخدم **on** لأن هنا نقصد اليوم:

- My birthday is **on** October 11<sup>th</sup>.

Read, think, and say. What country would you like to visit? Why?

اقرأ وفكر وقل. ما الدولة التي تريد أن تزورها؟ ولماذا؟

I would like to visit Zambia because I want to see elephants and lions.



2 Listen and read the leaflet. How many museums can you visit on this trip?

استمع وأقرأ المنشور. كم عدد المتاحف التي يمكنك زيارتها في هذه الرحلة؟

## DESERT TOURS TRIP TO JORDAN October 4-8

**Day 1:** Arrive in Amman and **check in**<sup>(1)</sup> to our hotel in the middle of the city. Enjoy some free time in the city before meeting at the Memphis restaurant for a **traditional**<sup>(2)</sup> Jordanian dinner in the evening.

**Day 2:** Today we enjoy a tour of Amman. Visit the famous **Amman Citadel**<sup>(3)</sup> before exploring the **Roman Amphitheater**<sup>(4)</sup> and the **Archaeological Museum**<sup>(5)</sup>. After a late lunch in a local restaurant, spend the afternoon and evening walking through Amman's many colorful **markets**<sup>(6)</sup>.

**Day 3:** Today we head out of the city for a **daytrip**<sup>(7)</sup> to **As-Salt**<sup>(8)</sup>. About an hour away from Amman, in the ancient town of As-Salt you will find lots of local Jordanian culture. The markets are wonderful and there are many traditional **arts and crafts**<sup>(9)</sup> to buy. We will visit the Abu Jaber Museum and **discover**<sup>(10)</sup> the **history**<sup>(11)</sup> of As-Salt as Jordan's important **trading center**<sup>(12)</sup>.

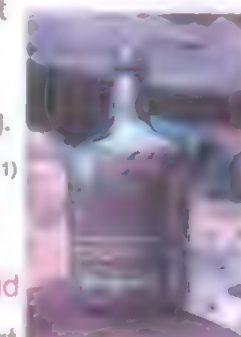
**Day 4:** No visit to Jordan is **complete**<sup>(13)</sup> without a trip to the **Dead Sea**<sup>(14)</sup>. There is so much salt in this sea that you are able to float on the water! You can also enjoy the Dead Sea **mud**<sup>(15)</sup>, which is very good for your skin.

**Day 5:** After enjoying a relaxed breakfast, we leave at 11am to drive three hours back to Amman. We will stop on the way for lunch before arriving at the **airport**<sup>(16)</sup> at 5 pm.



## Arabic Meaning

- 1- يسجل وصول فندق
- 2- تقليدي
- 3- قلعة عمان
- 4- المدرج الروماني
- 5- المتحف الأثري
- 6- أسواق
- 7- رحلة نهاري
- 8- مدينة السلط (الاردن)
- 9- فنون وحرف
- 10- اكتشاف
- 11- تاريخ
- 12- مركز تجاري
- 13- مكتمل
- 14- البحر الميت
- 15- طين
- 16- مطار





### 3 Read again and decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F):

اقرأ مرة أخرى وحدد إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أم خاطئة:

- 1- On the first day, you can see the Roman Amphitheater.
- 2- You visit As-Salt before you visit the Dead Sea.
- 3- The Abu Jaber Museum is in Jordan's capital city.
- 4- The markets in As-Salt sell traditional arts and crafts.
- 5- The Dead Sea mud is bad for your skin.
- 6- You arrive at the airport on day 5, at 5 am.

### 4 Read Nahla's diary entry. Which day is she describing? How do you know?

اقرأ تدوينة نهلة اليومية. أي يوم تصف؟ كيف تعرف؟

Dear Diary,

Today was the best day ever!<sup>(1)</sup> I love anything<sup>(2)</sup> to do with history- I always go to the museum at home, so today was a special<sup>(3)</sup> day for me. The bus ride<sup>(4)</sup> wasn't too bad. It only took an hour to reach<sup>(5)</sup> our destination<sup>(6)</sup>. I listened to music on the way and the time went quite<sup>(7)</sup> quickly. When we arrived, we had the chance to wander through<sup>(8)</sup> the streets and several<sup>(9)</sup> people bought traditional Jordanian handicrafts<sup>(10)</sup> from the stalls<sup>(11)</sup>. I bought a lovely colorful rug<sup>(12)</sup>. Saleh (our tour guide<sup>(13)</sup>) was very kind and took it to the bus for me so that I didn't have to carry it around! That was lucky because I spent hours in the museum!

استمع إلى النص



Thursday, October 6<sup>th</sup>

- 1- على الإطلاق
- 2- أي شيء
- 3- مميز
- 4- جولة بالأتوبيس
- 5- يصل إلى
- 6- جهة الوصول
- 7- إلى حد ما
- 8- يتجول عبر
- 9- عديد
- 10- مصنوعات يدوية
- 11- أكشاك
- 12- سجادة
- 13- مرشد سياحي

### 5 Complete the sentences with at, on, or in: أكمل الجمل بـ at / on / in:

- 1- Dad is a baker. He works ..... the mornings.
- 2- We go to the club ..... Saturdays.
- 3- Does our next class start ..... 2 pm?
- 4- Grandma was born ..... 1962.
- 5- Reem's birthday is ..... December 4<sup>th</sup>.

### 6 Complete the paragraph with at, on, or in: أكمل الفقرة بـ at / on / in:

..... Monday, we arrived in Amman. The flight landed ..... 4 o'clock ..... the afternoon. It was about 26 degrees and I was surprised that it was so warm ..... October. We went to our hotel and checked in. Our room was very comfortable. Later that evening, we had dinner at the Memphis restaurant in the city center. Amman is a really busy city ..... night. We walked around the markets and bought some traditional handicrafts. We went back to our hotel ..... about midnight.

### 7 Listen. Match the times with the speakers and activities:

استمع. وصل الأوقات مع المتحدثين وأنشطتهم:

Tapescript

نص الاستماع

استمع إلى النص



Narrator : 1

Boy 1 : Hi Ayman, do you want to play basketball after school on Thursday?

Ayman : On Thursday? I'm sorry, I can't, I go swimming on Thursdays.

Narrator : 2

Girl 1 : Hello Amira, shall we go shopping on the weekend?

Amira : Yes please, that sounds good!

Narrator : 3

Dad : Fareed, remember you have a dentist's appointment this afternoon.

Fareed : Oh yes, it's at five o'clock, isn't it?

Dad : Yes, that's right.

Fareed : Ok, thanks Dad.

Narrator : 4

Mom : Talia, our flight leaves at 11 am.

Talia : OK, Mom, I'll be ready.

Narrator : 5

Sherif : Mom, remember I'm playing football with Ramy in the morning.

Mom : Oh, yes, that's fine, Sherif.

Thanks for reminding me.

Narrator : 6

Sara : Mom, when are we visiting Grandma and Grandpa?

Mom : We're going in July, Sara. Not long now.





Ayman



Amira



Fareed



Talia



Sherif



Sara

a- on the weekend

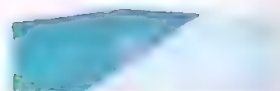
b- at 11 am

c- in the morning

d- on Thursday

e- in July

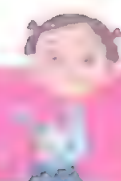
f- at 5 pm



Tell your partner what you do at these times. then write. Use on, in, or at:

قل لزميلك ماذا تفعل في هذه الأوقات ثم اكتب باستخدام at / on / in.

- 1- Wednesdays On Wednesdays, I play football after school.
- 2- the afternoon
- 3- summer
- 4- weekend
- 5- January
- 6- 6 pm



# Activities

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

- 1 Tourists visit many places in Egypt every year.
- 2 They always want to check in to a bad hotel.
- 3 They try traditional Egyptian food.
- 4 They like to go to Luxor and Aswan in summer.

True False

2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p><b>A</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 A diary entry is</li> <li>2 My grandpa was</li> <li>3 You will find lots of</li> <li>4 Mr Roshdi leaves his office at</li> <li>5 We head out</li> </ol> | <p><b>B</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a local Jordanian culture.</li> <li>b of the city for a daytrip.</li> <li>c. 11 am.</li> <li>d. born in 1950</li> <li>e. in the evening.</li> <li>f. a piece of writing in a diary.</li> </ol> |
|--|---|

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملًا صحيحة:

1. stop - for lunch - We - on the way - will.

2. visit - you - would - like to - What?



3. salt - is - the Dead Sea - There - in - so much.

4. football - Ali - Mondays - on - plays.

#### 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i spent hours in the park

2. how many museums can you visit on this trip

#### 5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

What you do at different times

weekend - Thursday - summer



## Al-Azhar Park

### Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



go on vacation  
a bit low

يذهب في إجازة  
حزين أو محبط قليلاً

bench  
awesome

مقعد طويل  
مذهل

### picnic - نزهة



picnic

طعام مخصص للنزهة / نزهة

suddenly

فجأة

playground

ملعب

together

معاً / سوياً

show

عرض (مسرحي)

year

عام / سنة

else

آخر / إضافي

cousin

ابن - ابنة (العم - العمة - الخال -  
الحالة)

past

مازاً / عابراً

grass

عشب / حشائش

meal

وجبة

beach

شاطيء

whole group

مجموعة كاملة

### Adjectives



possible

ممکن

interesting

ممتع / شيق

beautiful

جميل

cool

لطيف / بارد

wonderful

مدهش

fantastic

رائع

### Conjugation of Verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

phone يتصل تليفونيا  
agree يوافق  
shout يصيح  
arrive يصل  
seem يبدو

Past ماضٍ

phoned  
agreed  
shouted  
arrived  
seemed

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

come يأتي  
sit يجلس  
find يجد  
think يعتقد  
know يعرف

Past ماضٍ

came  
sat  
found  
thought  
knew



## Study the following

- 1 It was a hot summer. - كان صيفًا حارًا.
- 2 School was over and he wanted to go on vacation. - الدراسة انتهت وأراد (سليم) أن يذهب في إجازة.
- 3 His cousin Sherif was away at the beach. - ابن عمه شريف كان بعيدًا بالشاطئ.
- 4 His family usually went on vacation. - عادة ما تذهب عائلته في إجازة.
- 5 They had to stay in Cairo. - كان يجب عليهم البقاء في القاهرة.
- 6 I'm feeling a bit low. - أشعر بالحزن قليلًا.
- 7 I want to be at the beach. - أريد أن أكون على الشاطئ.
- 8 Can you come to the playground with us? - هل من الممكن أن تأتي معنا إلى الملعب؟
- 9 Why are you in the city? - لماذا أنت في المدينة؟
- 10 Mom sat on a bench and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. - جلست أمي على مقعد واستمتعت بكل النباتات والطيور الجميلة في المتنزه.
- 11 I think this is a fantastic place. - اعتقد أن هذا مكان رائع.
- 12 I can see there's a show next week. - أستطيع أن أرى أن هناك عرضًا الأسبوع القادم.
- 13 It seemed that summer in the city would be awesome! - بدا أن ذلك الصيف في المدينة كان رائعًا.

## 1 Listen and read the story. Why did Seleem feel better at the end of the story?

استمع وأقرأ القصة. لماذا شعر سليم بأنه آخر القصة؟

## Tapescript

## نص الاستماع

Seleem was feeling sad. It was a hot summer, school was over and he wanted to go on vacation<sup>(1)</sup>. His cousin Sherif was away at the beach and Seleem wanted to be there too. His family usually went on vacation with Sherif's family, but this year that wasn't possible<sup>(2)</sup> - Seleem's dad had a new job and they had to stay<sup>(3)</sup> in Cairo. Marwan, his friend, phoned him, "Hey, how are you, Seleem?" "I'm feeling a bit low<sup>(4)</sup> - I want to be at the beach," said Seleem. "Well, this year you can't go, so let's find something else to do!" said Marwan. "I know, let's go to Al-Azhar Park."



## Arabic Meaning

- ١- يذهب في إجازة
- ٢- ممكن
- ٣- يقيم/يمضي
- ٤- حزين قليلًا

"Hmm," said Seleem. "I don't know it, but it sounds<sup>(5)</sup> interesting!" Seleem's mom agreed<sup>(6)</sup> to take them to the park. She made a picnic<sup>(7)</sup>, so when they arrived, they sat under a big tree on the cool green grass<sup>(8)</sup> and enjoyed their food. It was such a beautiful day, and Marwan and Seleem played football. Suddenly Ramy and Maged, their friends from school, came running past. "Hi Ramy!" shouted Seleem. "Why are you in the city? I thought<sup>(9)</sup> you were at the beach!" "No," said Ramy. "My grandma's ill so Mom wanted to stay in Cairo. There's a whole group<sup>(10)</sup> of us who stayed at home and didn't travel. Can you come to the playground<sup>(11)</sup> with us?" Seleem asked his mom and they all went together<sup>(12)</sup> to the playground. Mom sat on a bench<sup>(13)</sup> and enjoyed all the beautiful plants and birds in the park. "I think this is a fantastic place," said Mom at the end of the afternoon. "I can see there's a show next week. Let's come back<sup>(14)</sup> with Dad, see the show, and have a meal<sup>(15)</sup> at the restaurant." Seleem felt very happy - now he knew his friends were in town and they had a wonderful park. It seemed<sup>(16)</sup> that summer in the city would be awesome<sup>(17)</sup>!

## 2 Read again and circle the correct answer:

اقرأ مرة أخرى وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة.

- 1- Seleem wasn't at school because  
☐ a he was ill. ☐ b he was on vacation.
- 2- Why did Seleem not go to the beach?  
☐ a Because his grandma was ill. ☐ b Because his dad had a new job.
- 3- Where did they eat in the park?  
☐ a on the grass ☐ b at the restaurant
- 4- Who did Seleem and Marwan meet at the park?  
☐ a friends from school ☐ b Sherif, Seleem's cousin
- 5- What did Seleem and his mom decide to do the following week?  
☐ a come back with Seleem's friends ☐ b come back with Seleem's dad

## 3 Think and say:

فكر وقل.

From what you have read in the story about Al-Azhar Park, would you like to spend a day there?

- ☐ a Yes? Tell your partner what things you would like to do in Al-Azhar Park and why.
- ☐ b No? Tell your partner what you would prefer to do that you can't do in Al-Azhar Park.







## Pronunciation

- سوف نتعرف في هذا الدرس على الفرق بين الاصوات /θ/ و /ð/ . لنطق حرفي والرمز الصوتي الدال عليها.

To make the /ð/ and /θ/ sounds, press your tongue against your top teeth. The /θ/ sound is unvoiced, which means you should feel some air on your hand when you say it. With the /ð/ sound, there's no air, but you can feel a vibration on your neck.

- لكي تنطق هذه الاصوات يجب أن تضغط بلسانك على أسنانك العليا.
- هذا الصوت /θ/ يشبه حرف (ث) في اللغة العربية وهو صوت لا تهتز به الاحبال الصوتية وهذا معناه أنك تشعر بهواء على يدك إذا قربتها من فمك عند خروج هذا الصوت.
- أما الصوت /ð/ يشبه حرف (ذ) في اللغة العربية ولا يوجد هواء عند خروجه ولكن تشعر باهتزاز في الاحبال الصوتية.

Listen and say these words: استمع وقل هذه الكلمات:

/θ/	/ð/
thing شئ	these هؤلاء
Thursday يوم الخميس	those أولئك
think يعتقد	this هذا
three ثلاثة	with مع
Earth الأرض	mother أم
author مؤلف	

Say these words. Add them to the correct column in Exercise 1. Then listen and check:

قل هذه الكلمات. ضفهم في الجدول الاتي حسب نطق حرفي (th) كما بالمثل:

bathroom - father - south - they - other - birthday - clothes - mouth - leather

th /θ/	th /ð/
bathroom	father

Look and write. Add the correct suffix to the words in brackets:

انظر واكتب. أضف النهاية الصحيحة للكلمات ما بين القوسين:

هناك بعض النهايات الشائعة التي تضاف للكلمات لتكوين الصفة مثل النهايات (ive / ous) في الجدول الاتي.

Word origin	أصل الكلمة	Adjective	الصفة
poison	سم	poisonous	سام
act	يتحرك	active	نشط
fame	شهرة	famous	مشهور
expense	تكلفة	expensive	غالي الثمن
enormity	ضخامة / كبير	enormous	ضخم

- 1- Be careful! That snake is ..... (poison)
- 2- Ali swims and runs. He's very ..... (act)
- 3- Everyone knows Soha. She is very ..... (fame)
- 4- His watch is very ..... (expense)



## Math

Many tourists come to visit Egypt and one of the most famous places is the Pyramids of Giza. All their sides are triangles. Let's learn more about triangles below.

- يأتي الكثير من السياح ليزوروا مصر وواحدة من أكثر الأماكن شهرة هي أهرامات الجيزة، كل جوانبها عبارة عن مثلثات.

- هيا نتعلم المزيد عن المثلثات بالأسفل.

An equilateral triangle		مثلث متساوي الأضلاع (أضلاعه الثلاثة متساوية)
A right angle triangle		مثلث قائم الزاوية (به زاوية قائمة ٩٠°)
An isosceles triangle		مثلث متساوي الساقين (به ضلعين متساويين)
A scalene triangle		مثلث مختلف الأضلاع (كل أضلاعه مختلفة في القياس)

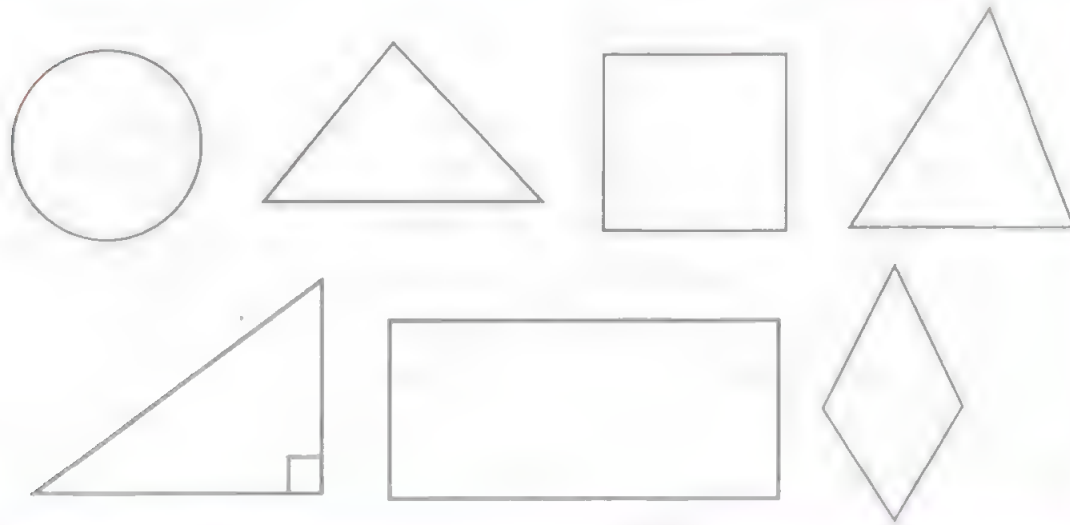


## 1 Look and read. Color the triangles:

انظر واقرأ ولون المثلثات.

A triangle is a 2D shape with three sides.

المثلث هو شكل ثنائي الأبعاد ذو ثلاثة أضلاع.



## 2 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل.

1- An equilateral triangle has three equal sides.



2- A right angle triangle has one angle that measures 90°.



3- An isosceles triangle has two sides of equal length.



4- A scalene triangle has three sides of different length.



## 1 Look. Circle the correct triangle type:

انظر وضع دائرة حول النوع الصحيح للمثلث.



1 right angle / scalene



2 isosceles / equilateral



3 right angle / isosceles



4 equilateral / scalene



## Activities

## 1 Listen and complete:

استمع وأكمل.

- Hani can do a lot of activities on .....
- Hani goes to Alexandria in .....
- They stay in a ..... in front of the sea.
- They swim in the sea and make sandcastles on the .....

## 2 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل.

- A**
- I'm feeling
  - Hanaa sat on
  - Shehab said that
  - I want to be
  - We enjoyed the beautiful

- B**
- plants and birds in the park.
  - at the beach.
  - a bit low.
  - a bench in the park.
  - go swimming.
  - the park was awesome.

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة.

- you - are - in - the - Why - city?
- to - Park - go - Al-Azhar - last
- wanted - like - to - vacation - on - go.
- thought - were - the - beach - you - on.

## 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي.

- can you come to the park with us
- let s come back with Muhammad.



Key vocabulary

استمع إلى المفردات:



Morocco	المغرب
Marrakech	مدينة مراكش (المغرب)
France	فرنسا
Paris	مدينة باريس (عاصمة فرنسا)
Eiffel Tower	برج آيفل (باريس)
the Louvre	متحف اللوفر (باريس)

French	اللغة الفرنسية / شخص فرنسي
sights	معالم سياحية
race	يتسابق
beach buggies	عربات شاطئية
paintings	لوحات
diary	مفكرة يومية

Other words

museum	متحف
formal language	اللغة الرسمية
local dishes	أكلات شعبية
chef	طاه / طبّاخ
perhaps	ربما
a bit	قليلاً
At the end of ...	في نهاية ...
shopping	التسوق
handicrafts	مصنوعات يدوية
stall	كشك

sand dunes	كثبان رملية
metal	معدن
smell	رائحة
snorkeling	الغطس
turtles	ملاحف
still	مازال
home	وطن / موطن
wandering	التجول
trip	رحلة قصيرة

Adjectives

perfect	رائع
hungry	جائع
special	مميز / خاص
traditional	تقليدي

crowded / busy	مزدحم
private	خاص
brightly-colored	ذو ألوان زاهية
cultural	حضاري / ثقافي

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

try	يحاول	tried
wait	يتظر	waited
visit	يزور	visited
remind	يُذكّر	reminded
include	يشتمل	included

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present مضارع

Past ماضٍ

understand	يفهم	understood
speak	يتكلم	spoke
keep up	يجاري	kept up

Study the following

1 We saw some famous sights from the boat.

- رأينا بعض المعالم السياحية المشهورة من القارب.

2 The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of metal.

- برج آيفل طويل جداً ومصنوع من المعدن.

3 The Louvre is a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings.

- اللوفر هو متحف جميل به لوحات رائعة.

4 The French people were very kind.

- كان الفرنسيون طيبون جداً.

5 When I spoke English, they understood me!

- عندما تحدثت باللغة الإنجليزية فهموني.

6 At the end of the day, we went to a French restaurant.

- في نهاية اليوم ذهبنا إلى مطعم للأكلات الفرنسية.

7 There's so much to do.

- يوجد أشياء كثيرة لتفعلها.

8 Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum.

- ذهبنا اليوم إلى مدرسة علي بن يوسف (متحف جميل).

9 I like it there because it reminds me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home.

- أحبها لأنها تذكّرني قليلاً بحديقة الأزهر في وطني (بلدي مصر).

10 The smells coming from the market stalls make me hungry!

- الروائح الآتية من الأكشاك الموجودة بالسوق جعلتني جائع.



استمع إلى النصوص:



Reem

July 21<sup>st</sup>

Dear Diary,

I had such a cool day today. I went on the river. We saw some famous sights<sup>(1)</sup> from the boat, like the Louvre<sup>(2)</sup>, a beautiful museum with fantastic paintings<sup>(3)</sup>, and the Eiffel Tower<sup>(4)</sup>. The Eiffel Tower is really tall and made of iron<sup>(5)</sup>. I tried to speak French<sup>(6)</sup>, but I couldn't really say anything. But the French people were very kind and when I spoke English, they understood<sup>(7)</sup> me! At the end of the day we went to a French restaurant and had a wonderful meal with potatoes. It was a special day.

أكتب اليوميات

- 1- مكان مشهور
- 2- متحف
- 3- لوحات
- 4- برج
- 5- حديد
- 6- فرنسي
- 7- فهم
- 8- مطعم
- 9- بطاطا

Amira

April 5<sup>th</sup>

Dear Diary,

I love this city! There's so much to do. Today we went to Ali Ben Youssef Madrasa, a beautiful museum that is 800 years old! We went early in the morning, but it was still<sup>(1)</sup> very busy<sup>(2)</sup> with people. We also visited Jardin Majorelle<sup>(3)</sup>, a lovely garden where we had a picnic. I like it there because it reminds<sup>(4)</sup> me a bit of Al-Azhar Park at home. But my favorite place is Jemaa el-Fnaa<sup>(5)</sup>, the market<sup>(6)</sup> place. The smells<sup>(7)</sup> coming from the market stalls<sup>(8)</sup> make me hungry! I had a sandwich yesterday. I can't wait<sup>(9)</sup> to go back there tomorrow!

أكتب اليوميات

- 1- مازال
- 2- مزدحم
- 3- حديقة جميلة
- 4- يذكر
- 5- جامع
- 6- سوق
- 7- رائحة
- 8- أكشاك
- 9- انتظر

Tip!

Write the date when you start a new diary entry.

اكتب التاريخ عندما تبدأ تدوينه اليومية جديدة.

Read. Check (✓) the statements that apply

اقرأ. ضع (✓) أمام ما يتم تنفيذه من الجمل عند كتابة تدوينه اليومية:

When writing a diary:

- 1- you should start with "Dear Diary".
- 2- you should write about how you felt.
- 3- you should use formal language.
- 4- you need to remember that other people will read it.
- 5- you should include personal pronouns like "I" and "me".

1 We go to the museum to go painting.

- نذهب للشاطئ لكي نمارس رياضة الغطس.

2 We race through the sand dunes in beach buggies!

- نتسابق عبر الكثبان الرملية بالعربات الشاطئية.

3 Can you keep up?

- هل تستطيع أن تجاري (السباق)؟

4 I went about the city's cultural past with a trip to the museum today.

- تعلم عن حضارة المدينة في الماضي من خلال رحلة إلى المتحف اليوم.

5 You can see the chef making the local dishes.

- يمكنك أن ترى الطاهي (الطباخ) يُعد الأكلات الشعبية.



## Writing a diary

When you write a diary, you should... عندما تكتب مفكرة يومية ينبغي أن

Write the date.

تكتب تاريخ اليوم.

Start with "Dear Diary".

تبدأ ب: مذكراتي العزيزة.

Describe the places / events.

تصف الأماكن والأحداث.

Say how you felt.

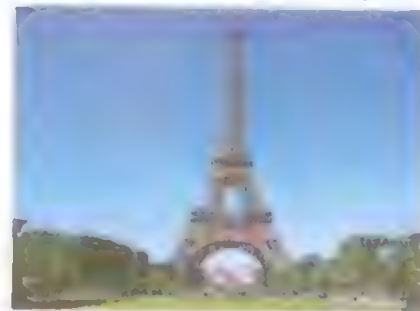
تقول ما شعرت به.

Read the diary entries. Match the people to the places

اقرأ التدوينات اليومية. صل الناس بالأماكن:



1 Marrakech, Morocco



2 Eiffel Tower, Paris, France



## 3 Read and circle:

اقرأ وضع دائرة،

Read the two diary entries again. Who ...

اقرأ التدوينتين اليومية مرة أخرى. اختر دريم، أو أميرة،

- |  |      |       |
|--|------|-------|
| 1- went on a boat?                                   | Reem | Amira |
| 2- thought somewhere was very crowded?               | Reem | Amira |
| 3- went somewhere that was like a place at home?     | Reem | Amira |
| 4- saw something beautiful made of metal?            | Reem | Amira |
| 5- said that the smell of the food made them hungry? | Reem | Amira |
| 6- ate something made of potatoes for dinner?        | Reem | Amira |

Think of a day when you did something special. Write a diary entry of about 30-40 words:

فكر في يوم عندما فعلت شيئاً مميزاً. اكتب تدوينه يومية من حوالي ٣٠ - ٤٠ كلمة،

## Remember:

- Write the date.
- Start with "Dear Diary".
- Describe the places / events.
- Say how you felt.

## Think!

We shouldn't read other people's diaries because they are private. However, do you think it's right to read the diaries of people from the past? Why? Why not?

يجب عليك ألا تقرأ يوميات الآخرين. لأن هذه اليوميات خاصة بهم ولكن هل من الصحيح أن تقرأ اليوميات الخاصة بالآخرين من الماضي في رأيك لماذا لا؟

## 5 Read. Do you want to go on this vacation? Why? / Why not?

اقرأ. هل تريد أن تذهب في أجازة؟ لماذا لا؟ لماذا؟

## My perfect vacation.

استمع إلى النصوص.



## Day 1

In the morning, we go to the beach to go **snorkeling**<sup>(1)</sup>. Swim with the **turtles**<sup>(2)</sup> and **brightly-colored**<sup>(3)</sup> fish! The afternoon can be spent on the beach with a **picnic**<sup>(4)</sup> and a good book.



- 1- الذهاب للسباحة  
2- السلاحف  
3- ألوان زاهية  
4- عشاء

## Day 2

Today we **race**<sup>(5)</sup> through the sand dunes in **beach buggies**<sup>(6)</sup>! It's fun and fast! Can you **keep up**<sup>(7)</sup>?



- 5- سباق  
6- عربات شاطئ  
7- مواكبة

## Day 3

Spend a relaxed day shopping and **wandering through**<sup>(8)</sup> the markets. **Perhaps**<sup>(9)</sup> buy some traditional **handicrafts**<sup>(10)</sup> to take home.



- 8- الترحل  
9- ربما  
10- مصنوعات يدوية

## Day 4

Learn about the city's **cultural**<sup>(11)</sup> past with a **trip**<sup>(12)</sup> to the museum today. In the evening, we go to a traditional restaurant where you can see the chef making the **local dishes**<sup>(13)</sup>.



- 11- ثقافي  
12- رحلة قصيرة  
13- أطباق شعبية



# Activities



## 1 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

<p><b>A</b></p> <p>1 You can see the chef</p> <p>2 We go to the beach to</p> <p>3 When I spoke English,</p> <p>4 The Louvre is a beautiful</p> <p>5 It reminds me</p>	<p><b>B</b></p> <p>a. museum with fantastic paintings.</p> <p>b. of Al-Azhar Park.</p> <p>c. making the local dishes.</p> <p>d. go snorkeling.</p> <p>e. made of metal.</p> <p>f. they understood me!</p>
---	---

## 2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I'm Walid. I want to have a perfect vacation. My next trip is to Cairo. I love this city! I want to go to the Cairo Tower. It is so tall and made of metal. I want to go to the Egyptian Museum. I will learn a lot about Egypt in the past. I also want to visit Al-Azhar Park. It has a lot of fantastic trees and flowers. It sounds interesting! I can't wait to go there soon!

### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The Cairo Tower is made of .....  
☐ a carton    ☐ b paper    ☐ c mud    ☐ d metal
- The underlined word "It" refers to .....  
☐ a Cairo    ☐ b the Cairo Tower    ☐ c Egyptian Museum    ☐ d Al-Azhar Park

### B- Answer the following questions:

- What does Walid want to have?
- Where will Walid learn about Egypt in the past?

## 3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- the - on - went - I - river.  
 .....
- you - Don - up - keep?  
 .....
- some - saw - sights - famous - Mosque.  
 .....
- metal - Eiffel - The - made of - is - Tower.  
 .....

## 4 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- The french people were very kind  
 .....
- why does Mohamed feel hungry  
 .....

## 5 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following trailing elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

A race through the sand

sand dunes - beach buggies

مجاوب آخر الوحدة







# Review

## Key vocabulary



hotel  
فندق



swimming pool  
حمام سباحة



high-rise building  
ناطحة سحاب



theme park  
ملاهي



ticket  
تذكرة



museum  
متحف



airport  
مطار



tourist  
سائح



passport  
جواز سفر

traditional  
daytrip  
diary  
go on vacation  
a bit low  
diary entry  
wander  
handicrafts  
stalls

تقليدي  
رحلة في وقت النهار  
مفكرة يومية  
يذهب في إجازة  
حزين قليلا  
تدوينة يومية  
يتجول  
مصنوعات يدوية  
أكشاك

bench  
awesome  
sights  
race  
beach buggies  
paintings  
Morocco  
Eiffel Tower  
the Louvre

مقعد طويل  
مدهل  
معالم سياحية  
بتسابق  
عربات شاطئية  
لوحات  
دولة المغرب  
برج آيفل  
متحف اللوفر (باريس)

## Other words

luckily  
flight  
vacation  
footprints  
banks  
leaflet  
tour

لحسن الحظ  
رحلة جوية  
إجازة / عطلة  
آثار القدم  
ضفاف  
منشور  
جولة

chance  
destination  
mud  
exploring  
trading center  
citadel  
suddenly

فرصة  
جهة الوصول  
وحل / طين  
استكشاف  
مركز تجاري  
قلعة  
فجأة

## Conjugation of verbs

### Regular verbs

Present

harvest  
check in  
head out  
float  
walk around  
discover

### أفعال منتظمة

Present

harvested  
checked in  
headed out  
floated  
walked around  
discovered

### Irregular verbs

Present

fly  
take photos  
wake up  
put on  
shine  
am

### أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

flew  
took photos  
woke up  
put on  
shone  
were

## Grammar

### Prepositions of time

نستخدم حرف الجر **on** قبل أيام الأسبوع والمناسبات الخاصة والتواريخ المحددة:

- I don't go to a school **on** Fridays.
- I am having a party **on** my birthday.
- I was born **on** July 6<sup>th</sup>, 2010.

نستخدم حرف الجر **at** قبل الوقت وبعض العبارات:

- The train to Aswan leaves **at** 8 pm. / **at** lunchtime / night / midnight

نستخدم حرف الجر **in** قبل الشهور وفصول السنة والسنوات وأيضا أوقات اليوم:

- My birthday is **in** June.
- I was born **in** 2010.
- **in** the afternoon / evening

لاحظ إذا جاء رقم بعد الشهر نستخدم **on** لأن هنا نقصد اليوم:

- My birthday is **on** October 11<sup>th</sup>.



## Prepositions of place

/ə/

thing  
Thursday  
think  
three  
Earth  
author

/ð/

these  
those  
this  
with  
mother

هذه  
أولئك  
هذا  
مع  
أم



Write a paragraph of Forty  
(40) words.

## Answers to Paragraphs

## Lesson 3

## What you do at different times

- 1 On Thursdays, I can do my things at different times. I go swimming at seven am. I always take my swimming shorts I go to the park at twelve am. Then, I go to the museum at two o'clock. I enjoy my day.



## Lessons 5&amp;6

## A race through the sand

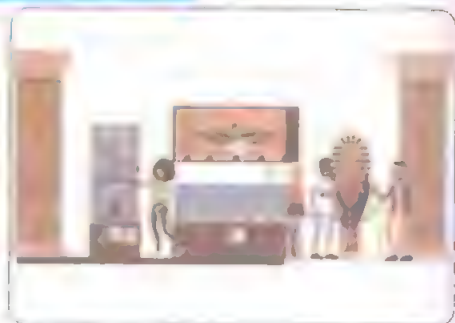
- 2 I like racing through the sand dunes in beach buggies. It's fun and fast. I go with my friends. It's exciting and safe. I go there every week. I enjoy my time there. This is my perfect vacation.



## Activity Unit 12

## The things you enjoyed on vacation

- 3 On vacations, I learn new things. My father took us to the Egyptian Museum. We saw fantastic statues there. The statues are made of gold or rocks. We knew many things and enjoyed a lot. I want to go there again.



## Al-Azhar Exercises

التمارين الخاصة بالدرس

## A- Listening

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع وأختَر:

1. Ali is a ..... (doctor - farmer - teacher)  
2. Ali grows vegetables and keeps ..... (animals - birds - dinosaurs)

## B- Language Functions

## 2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

snorkeling - sandcastles - beach

A: Where would you like to go?

B: I want to go to the .....

A: Do you want to go .....

B: Yes. I want to make ....., too.

## C- Reading Comprehension

## 3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Hamza visited the zoo last weekend. He saw a lot of animals. He fed the elephant and the giraffe. He took photos with them. He liked his vacation.

## Choose the correct answer:

1. Hamza visited the ..... (zoo - park - beach)  
2. Hamza saw a lot of ..... (rocks - lakes - animals)  
3. He fed the ..... and the giraffe. (lion - elephant - deer)  
4. He took ..... with the elephant and the giraffe. (carrots - lakes - photos)  
5. Hamza liked his ..... (football - vacation - school)



## D- Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c: اختر الاجابة الصحيحة

- My birthday is ----- Monday.  
a in b on c at
- I put my clothes in a -----  
a passport b vacation c suitcase
- Trees are ----- resources.  
a natural b man-made c human
- My family wanted to go on -----  
a suitcase b vacation c passport
- I get up ----- 7 am.  
a in b on c at

## E- The Reader

2 Choose the correct answer : اختر الاجابة الصحيحة:

- Ramy looks down at the ----- near the path.  
a seas b rocks c rivers
- Dad takes a photo of a fennec -----  
a box b ox c fox

## F- Writing

3 Write a short paragraph of four (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن:

A visit to the theme park



## Activity

ON UNIT  
12

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

- |  | True | False |
|--|------|-------|
| 1 Ramy and Adam are friends.                           |      |       |
| 2 They are in primary four.                            |      |       |
| 3 Ramy likes playing football after school on Monday.  |      |       |
| 4 Adam goes swimming on Friday with his sister, Rawan. |      |       |

2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

- Egypt is a good destination for .....
- Millions of people ..... Egypt every year.
- They spend their ..... in Egypt.
- They enjoy seeing many .....

3 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

- | A                         | B                                    |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Our school year         | a. to travel to a different country. |
| 2 You can go on different | b. a hotel when he is on vacation.   |
| 3 Khaled stays in         | c. ends in the summer.               |
| 4 You need a passport     | d. put your clothes in the suitcase. |
| 5 When you travel,        | e. rides at the theme park.          |
|                           | f. arriving at the airport.          |



## 4 Read the following and answer the questions:

اقرأ الآتي ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Reda. I want to spend my next weekend in the Orman Garden. It is one of the most famous botanical gardens in Egypt. It is located in Giza. The garden has a lot of beautiful trees and flowers. It has a spring festival every year. The Spring Festival usually starts in March and it is an important Egyptian cultural event in spring. The festival usually lasts for a month. It will be a good vacation.

## A- Choose the right answer from a, b, or c:

- The Spring Festival usually starts in .....  
☐ a July      ☐ b March      ☐ c May      ☐ d June
- Reda will have a ..... vacation.  
☐ a bad      ☐ b useless      ☐ c boring      ☐ d good

## B- Answer the following questions:

- What does Reda want? .....
- Where is the Orman Garden located? .....

## 5 Read and reorder the following to make sentences: أعد ترتيب الكلمات:

- snorkeling - We - going - the weekend - on - are. ....
- your - Friday - is - on - birthday? .....
- sandcastles - can - the beach - make - on - We. ....
- does - When - land - flight - our? .....

## 6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- ali can have fun at the theme park .....
- did you visit Al-Azhar Park at night .....

## 7 Write a paragraph of Forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

مجاوب آخر الوحدة

The things you enjoyed on vacation

statues - enjoyed



## Review

## 4



## Objectives of Review 4

أهداف المراجعة

## Lesson 1: Listening and speaking

- To revise the vocabulary and language from Units 10 - 12.

- يراجع الطالب المفردات والقواعد اللغوية الموجودة بالوحدات من ١٠ إلى ١٢.

## Lesson 2: Phonics and Assessment

- To revise the key letter sounds from Units 10 - 12.

- يراجع الطالب الصوتيات من الوحدات ١٠ إلى ١٢.

- To evaluate progress in Units 10 - 12.

- يتم تقييم مدى نجاح الطالب في استيعاب الوحدات من ١٠ إلى ١٢.

- To read postcards and answer questions.

- يقرأ الطالب بطاقات بريدية ويجيب عن أسئلة.





## 1 Write the missing letters. Listen and check:

اكتب الحروف الناقصة.



1- city



2- h - - l



3- str - - m



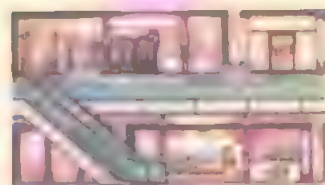
4- v - l - a - e



5- st - t - - n



6- m - s - - m

7- s - i - m - n -  
p - o -8- s - o - p - n -  
m - l -

9- r - s - a - r - n -

## 2 Rewrite the sentences using imperatives:

أعد كتابة الجمل مستخدماً صيغة الأمر:

1. First of all, you need to check that your car is ready for the trip.

First of all, check that your car is ready for the trip.

2. You shouldn't eat while you're driving.

3. You should make sure you drive slowly in crowded places.

4. You shouldn't use your mobile phone when you're driving.

5. You must stop when the traffic light is red.

6. You mustn't park in wrong places.

7. You shouldn't drive when you are tired.

## 3 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. We saw a lot of wonderful **paintings** / **factories** in the museums.2. Tourists like to see the amazing **monuments** / **fields** in Luxor.3. We will take a **relaxing** / **fixing** boat trip on the River Nile.4. I like the **bad** / **delicious** food my mother usually cooks.

## 4 Read and match:

اقرأ وصل:

1 Don't make noise

2 I will send you another email

3 My brother usually

4 Tourists like to wander

5 My mom and dad

a. when I arrive in London.

b. does his homework carefully.

c. inside the school library.

d. through the streets of Khan  
Al-Khalili.

e. went on a desert hike.



1 Check (✓) the sentences that are correct. Rewrite the sentences that are incorrect :

ضع علامة صح أمام الجمل الصحيحة. أعد كتابة الجمل الغير صحيحة :

1. It was very sunnily, so I wore my sunglasses. ( )  
It was very sunny, so I wore my sunglasses.
2. We went for a nice walk on the nature trail. ( )
3. Dad often goes walking, so he knows the nature trail well. ( )
4. Dad walked fast, but Mom walked more slowly. ( )
5. Tamer wore his new hiking boots, which were very comfortably. ( )

2 Complete the sentences using the words in the box:

أكمل الجمل مستخدماً الكلمات في القائمة :

carefully - fast - well - heavy - slowly

1. We studied the map carefully, so we didn't get lost.
2. I packed lots of clothes in my suitcase, so it was too \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Wael can speak English very \_\_\_\_\_.
4. They had a picnic then walked \_\_\_\_\_ through the park.
5. How \_\_\_\_\_ can you swim?

3 Circle the correct words:

ضع دائرة على الكلمات الصحيحة :

1. We flew to Alexandria at / in / on Monday.
2. Our flight leaves at / in / on 8 am.
3. Many people leave the city at / in / on summer.
4. We are going to the park at / in / on the afternoon.
5. Her cousins usually visit her at / in / on July.

4 Read. Match the places (1 - 4) to the postcards (a-d):

اقرأ. صل المكان المناسب بالبطاقة الخاصة به :

1. a busy city
2. a desert
3. a nature trail
4. a village

a

Hi Magdy,  
I'm having a lovely time here. It's peaceful and very quiet, especially at night. There are a few shops and houses. There is only one restaurant, but it's great! Everyone who lives here is really friendly.  
Bye!  
Ali

Dear Amr,  
Thank you for telling me to pack some good hiking shoes and a sun hat! We have walked for many hours every day. There are amazing things to see - some unusual flowers and trees. One day, I was lucky enough to see a fennec fox and a wild cat!  
Hope you're all well,  
Salah

Hi Ghada,  
We arrived on Monday, and we haven't stopped! There is so much to see here. We visited some museums and the theater, and we had an amazing tour of famous places. It's really fun, but very busy and crowded.  
See you soon,  
Randa

Hello Rabab,  
How are you? I'm having a real adventure here. We arrived on the weekend and set up our tent. It's quite difficult to sleep in a tent on sand! At night, we sit around a fire. (It gets really cold here at night) We sing songs and eat delicious food, which we cook on the fire. You can see a million stars! It's beautiful.  
See you next week,  
Sahar

5 Imagine you are on holiday in one of the places 1-4 in Exercise 4. Write a postcard of 30 words to a friend. Think about:

تخيل أنك في إجازة في أحد الأماكن في التمرين 4. اكتب بطاقة من 30 كلمة لصديق :

- ☐ where you are
- ☐ how you traveled
- ☐ who you are there with
- ☐ what you did yesterday
- ☐ why you like the place





# Activity



1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صح) أو (خطأ):

	True	False
1 I went to Alexandria in winter.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 The hotel was near the beach.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 There were many tourists in the hotel.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 The vacation was wonderful.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

2 Listen and complete: استمع وأكمل:

- Ramy wants to play ..... after school.
- Walid has a ..... appointment.
- Walid's tooth .....
- Ramy advised Walid to eat ..... food.

3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

A	B
1 Don't touch the paintings	a. is a nice person.
2 I bought some clothes	b. carefully for the trip.
3 On vacation, I take my phone	c. when you visit a museum.
4 Tourists like visiting	d. the monuments in Luxor.
5 She packed her suitcase	e. to take photos.
	f. from the shopping mall.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Libraries are important places. We go to the library to read and learn a lot of useful information. There are many rules to follow in the library. We shouldn't eat or drink in the library. We should keep it clean and put the books we use on the shelves. We should be quiet, too. If we need any help, we can ask the librarian to help us.

Help your child deal with such questions. يساعد طفلك ان يتعامل مع هذه الأسئلة.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The underlined word "it" refers to the .....  
a information b library c book d librarian
- We should be ..... in the library.  
a noisy b amazed c quiet d bored

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do we go to the library?

4. Who should you ask for help in the library?

5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

اعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. stone - is - A - a large - rock.

2. a - Mr - designer - Gamal - clever - is ?

3. Japan - fly - tomorrow - Will - to.

4. did - How - walk - across - the tortoise - the grass?

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. will your next class start at 10 pm

2. i'm free on this weekend

7 Write a paragraph of forty (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من (٤٠) كلمة عن:

McAuliffe Park

Cairo - fantastic place







### Objectives of the Reader

#### أهداف القصة

1. To read and understand a story. - يقرأ الطالب ويفهم قصة.
2. To enjoy reading in English. - يستمتع الطالب بالقراءة باللغة الإنجليزية.
3. To identify characters in a story. - يتعرف الطالب على شخصيات قصة.
4. To identify the key events and vocabulary in a story. - يتعرف الطالب على الأحداث الرئيسية والمفردات في قصة.
5. To review the story and check understanding. - يراجع الطالب القصة ويتأكد من فهمه لها.
6. To put events from a story in order. - يرتب أحداث من القصة بشكل صحيح.
7. To examine the characters in a story. - يختبر الطالب في شخصيات القصة.
8. To retell the story. - يعيد الطالب رواية القصة.

## Vocabulary

### Characters of the Reader

شخصيات القصة



Dad

أب



Mom

أم



Ramy

رامي



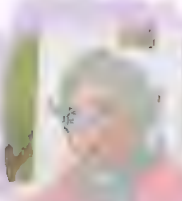
Malak

ملك



Grandpa

جد



Grandma

الجددة



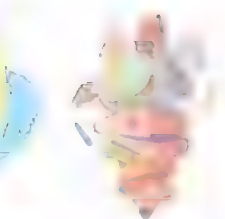
Uncle Youssef

العم يوسف



## Picture Dictionary

قاموس الصور



استمع إلى المفردات والنصوص



**dinosaur** الديناصور

Dinosaurs were very big animals which lived millions of years ago.

كانت الديناصورات حيوانات ضخمة عاشت منذ ملايين السنين.



**skeloton** هيكل عظمي

Fish and other animals have a skeleton made of bones inside their bodies.

تمتلك الأسماك والحيوانات الأخرى هيكل عظمي داخل أجسادهم.



**bones** العظام

Our body has many bones to help us stand up.

جسمنا به عظاماً عديدة لتساعدنا على الوقوف.



**tracks** آثار أقدام

Animals' feet leave tracks on the ground where they walked.

تترك أقدام الحيوانات آثاراً على الأرض التي ساروا عليها.



**binoculars** المنظار

نظارة مكبرة / معظمة

She likes looking at things in the distance with her binoculars.

تحب النظر إلى الأشياء البعيدة بالمنظار الخاص بها.

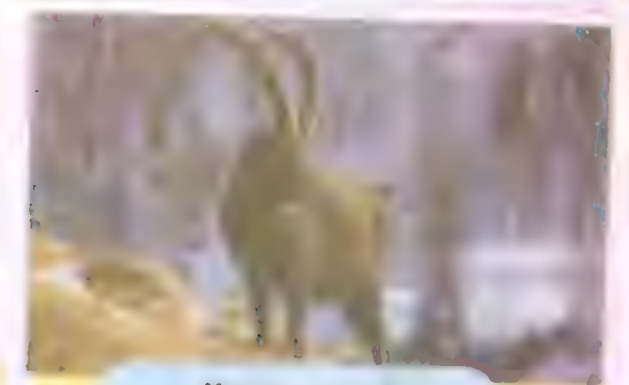


**archaeologist** عالم آثار

An archaeologist is someone who digs underground to find objects from many years ago and studies them.

عالم الآثار هو الشخص الذي يحفر تحت الأرض للعثور على أشياء من سنوات عديدة ويدرسها.

## A Fantastic Family Adventure



**ibex** الوعل

An ibex is a type of desert animal like a gazelle.

الوعل هو حيوان صحراوي مثل الغزال.



**archaeological dig** حفر أثري

An archaeological dig is when people work together to find something under the ground.

ينشئ الحفر الأثري عندما يعمل الناس معاً للعثور على شيء ما تحت الأرض.



## The Reader

القصة

استمع الى نص القصة



Ramy and Malak are playing in the yard<sup>(1)</sup>. Suddenly Dad calls them from the house.

"Hey kids, come and see this story in the newspaper<sup>(2)</sup>!"

The children run inside to see. Dad says, "Look. They found something amazing<sup>(3)</sup> near Grandma and Grandpa's village."

يلعب رامي وملاك في الفناء. فجأة ينادي عليهم والدهم من المنزل.

"يا أولاد، تعالوا وشاهدوا هذه القصة في الجريدة!"

يركض الأولاد إلى الداخل ليرؤوا. يقول والدهم "انظروا. لقد وجدوا شيئاً رائعاً بالقرب من قرية جدكم وجدتكهم."

"What is it. Dad?" asks Ramy. "It looks scary<sup>(4)</sup>!"

Dad says, "No Ramy, it's not scary at all. It's the skeleton<sup>(5)</sup> of a dinosaur<sup>(6)</sup>. A group of archaeologists<sup>(7)</sup> found it. And your uncle Youssef is one of those archaeologists!"

يسأل رامي "ما هذا يا أبي؟ إنه يبدو مخيفاً!"

يقول الأب "لا يا رامي، إنه ليس مخيفاً على الإطلاق. إنه هيكل عظمي لديناصور. عثر عليه مجموعة من علماء الآثار. وعمك يوسف واحد من هؤلاء."

2



That's awesome<sup>(1)</sup>, Dad!" says Malak. "The dinosaur skeleton is really old, isn't it?"

"Yes, that's right, Malak" says Dad. "It's about 98 million years old!"

"Wow! Uncle Youssef has got a really interesting<sup>(2)</sup> job, hasn't he?" says Ramy.

"Yes, he has. And his work is important<sup>(3)</sup> too. It helps us learn about the past." says Dad.

تقول ملك "هذا رائع يا أبي! الهيكل العظمي للديناصور قديم حقاً، أليس كذلك؟"

يقول الأب "نعم، هذا صحيح يا ملك. يصل عمره إلى حوالي ٩٨ مليون عام!"

يقول رامي "رائع! يعمل العم يوسف في وظيفة ممتعة حقاً، أليس كذلك؟"

يقول الأب "نعم، هو كذلك. وعمله مهم أيضاً. إنه يساعدنا في التعرف على الماضي."

شعر

جريدة

مذهل

مخيف

هشاش عتيق

ديناصور

علماء آثار

1- awesome

2- interesting رائع

3- important شيق

مهم





Later that evening Ramy and his family are having dinner.

Dad says, "Do you want to go there the next time we go to Grandma's house?"

في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء يتناول رامي وعائلته العشاء.

يقول الأب "هل تريد الذهاب إلى هناك عندما نذهب إلى منزل جدتك في المرة القادمة؟"

Ramy says, "That's a great idea, Dad. It would be an **adventure**<sup>(1)</sup> to go into the desert!"

Mom says, "There's a beautiful **nature trail**<sup>(2)</sup> there. Why don't we walk that together?"

"Oh yes please. Mom! I love nature." says Malak.

يقول رامي "هذه فكرة رائعة يا أبي. الذهاب إلى الصحراء سيكون مغامرة!"

تقول الأم "يوجد ممشى (درب) طبيعي جميل هناك. لماذا لا نسير فيه معاً؟"

تقول ملك "نعم من فضلك يا أمي! أحب الطبيعة."



"Ramy! Malak!" Grandma calls. She is so **excited**<sup>(1)</sup> to see her **grandchildren**<sup>(2)</sup>.

"I have prepared your favorite things - **feteer**<sup>(3)</sup> and **mint tea**<sup>(4)</sup>! Come inside and eat."

تنادي الحدة "رامي! ملك!" إنها متحمسة للغاية لرؤية أحفادها.

"أعددت أشياءكم المفضلة - فطير وشاي بالنعناع! تعالوا إلى الداخل وتناولوا الطعام."

"Hello," says Grandpa to Mom and Dad. "It's so good to see you."

"It's lovely to be here," says Dad. "Tomorrow we want to take the children on a nature trail."

يقول الجد لأمي وأبي "مرحباً. إنه من الجيد رؤيتكم."

يقول أبي "من الرائع أن نكون هنا. نريد غداً أن نأخذ الأولاد إلى الممشى (الدرب) الطبيعي."

"Excellent," says Grandpa. "There's lots to see in our area. It's a beautiful place."

يقول الحد "ممتاز. هناك الكثير لتروه في منطقتنا. إنه مكان جميل."



6



It's a lovely warm day, not too hot. It's a **perfect** day for walking. There are **cooling** plants and palm trees and they see sheep and some camels.

إنه يوم جميل ودافئ، ليس شديد الحرارة. إنه يوم مثالي للمشي. يوجد نباتات الصبار والنخيل وهم يشاهدون الخراف وبعض الجمال.

Malak is very pleased because she loves animals. "Please walk quietly and carefully everyone." she says. "If we are quiet, we could see a **fennec fox**<sup>(3)</sup>, or a **dorcas gazelle**<sup>(4)</sup>, or maybe a sand cat."

تشعر ملك بسعادة بالغة لأنها تحب الحيوانات. تقول "أرجو من الجميع المشي بهدوء وبعباية. عندما نكون هادئين، يمكننا مشاهدة ثعلب الفنك أو غزال دوركاس أو ربما قطة الرمال."

The family continue along the trail. Ramy sees animals' **tracks** in the sand.

Dad takes a photo of a fennec fox. Mom sees many beautiful birds. Everyone is enjoying the trail.

بواصل العائلة السير على طول الممشى. يشاهد رامي آثار أقدام الحيوانات في الرمال. يلتقط أبي صورة لثعلب الفنك. تشاهد أمي العديد من الطيور الجميلة. الجميع يستمتع



The next morning everyone is happy. They are ready to walk the nature trail. They are wearing hats, scarves, and sunglasses.

في صباح اليوم التالي الجميع سعداء. إنهم مستعدون للسير في الممشى (الدرب) الطبيعي. إنهم يرتدون القبعات واللاوشحه و نظارات الشمس.

They have snacks and water in their **backpacks**<sup>(1)</sup>. Mom has some **binoculars**<sup>(2)</sup> too. She wants to look at the amazing birds that live here. They are in a beautiful part of Egypt with many types of **rare**<sup>(3)</sup> animals.

لديهم وجبات خفيفة وماء في حقائب الظهر الخاصة بهم. أمي لديها منظار (نظارة مكبرة) أيضاً. إنها تريد أن تنظر إلى الطيور الرائعة التي تعيش هنا. إنهم في جزء جميل من مصر حيث يحتوي على العديد من أنواع الحيوانات النادرة.



7



Then Mom says, "Hey everyone. I have something in my shoe. Can we stop for a minute?"

She sits down. The others drink some water and wait. Ramy looks down at the rocks near the path. He sees some strange shapes inside them.

ثم تقول الام: "مرحباً بالجميع. لدي شيء في حذائي. هل يمكننا التوقف لدقيقة؟" نجلس الام. يسرب الآخرون بعض الماء ويضطرون. ينظر رامي للأسفل إلى الصخور بالقرب من الطريق. يرى بعض الأسكال الغريبة بداخلها.

"Look!" he says. "What are these things in the rocks, Dad?"

"I don't know," says Dad. "They look like bones<sup>(1)</sup>..."

"We are very near the place they found the dinosaur skeleton," says Mom. "Maybe they are dinosaur bones!"

"يقول رامي: 'انظروا ما هذه الأشياء في الصخور يا أبي؟' يقول الأب: 'لا أعرف. تبدو ومثل العظام.'"

يقول الام: "نحن قريبون جداً من المكان الذي وجدوا فيه الهيكل العظمي للديناصور. ربما تكون عظام ديناصور."

Ramy is very excited. "Let's ask Uncle Youssef!" he says. "Dad, can we call him?"

"Yes, of course," says Dad.

Uncle Youssef is very interested in<sup>(2)</sup> the rocks Ramy found. He tells Dad to take some photographs<sup>(3)</sup> of them and meet him at Grandma's house for dinner.

رامي متحمس جداً ويقول: "لنسال العم يوسف! هل يمكن ان نتصل به يا أبي؟" يقول الأب: "نعم بالطبع."

العم يوسف مهتم جداً بالصخور التي وجدها رامي. يحذر أبي أن يلتقط بعض الصور لهم وأن يلتقي به في منزل جدتي على العشاء.

8



Later that evening Dad shows Uncle Youssef the photos and Ramy shows him the place on the map. Uncle Youssef asks the family to go back there with him the next day.

في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء، يعرض أبي الصور على العم يوسف ويوضح له رامي المكان على الخريطة. يطلب العم يوسف من العائلة العودة معه هناك في اليوم التالي.

9



The next day they go back along the trail. They find Ramy's rocks and Uncle Youssef looks at them carefully.

في اليوم التالي يعودون على امتداد الممشى. يعثروا على صخور رامي وينظر عمه يوسف بعناية.

"They are not dinosaur bones in the rocks," says Uncle Youssef. "But they are certainly<sup>(1)</sup> very old. They are probably from a type of ancient ibex that doesn't exist<sup>(2)</sup> now."

يقول العم يوسف: "لا يوجد عظام ديناصور في الصخور. لكنها بالتأكيد قديمة جداً. ربما هي عظام لبوع قديم من أنواع الوعل والغير موجود الآن."

Ramy is disappointed<sup>(3)</sup> because the bones are not from a dinosaur. But Uncle Youssef says, "Well done Ramy for finding them! It is important to take time to look at the world around us and watch things - just like an archaeologist! Now, would you all like to come to the dig and see my dinosaur skeleton?" "Yes please, Uncle Youssef!" say Ramy and Malak.

يصاب رامي بخيبة أمل لأن العظام ليست عظام ديناصور. لكن العم يوسف يقول: "أحسن يا رامي في العثور عليها! من المهم أن تخصص بعض من وقتك في النظر إلى العالم من حولك ومشاهدة الأشياء - تماماً مثل عالم الآثار! الآن، هل ترغبون جميعاً في القدوم إلى عمليتي التنقيب ورؤية الهيكل العظمي للديناصور الذي وجدته؟" يقول رامي وملاك: "نعم من فضلك يا عمي يوسف!"





"Here he is," says Uncle Youssef. "What do you think?"

"Wow!" says Ramy. "It's amazing to think it lived millions of years ago."

"And that its bones were under the ground for such a long time." says Malak.

"In fact, we found the skeleton because of **climate change**<sup>(1)</sup>," says Uncle Youssef.

يقول العم يوسف "ها هو، ما رأيكم؟"  
يقول رامي "رائع! إنه لا أمر مدهش أن تتخيل أنه عاش منذ ملايين السنين."  
تقول ملك "وإن عظامه كانت تحت الأرض لمثل هذه الفترة الطويلة."  
يقول العم يوسف "في الواقع، وحدنا الهيكل العظمي بسبب تغير المناخ."

"Now there is less rain and fewer plants. This means the ground is **dry** and the wind can **blow** away the sand. Things that were under the ground come to the **surface**<sup>(4)</sup>. That's good for archaeologists but bad for the **desert**."

"الآن هناك أمطار أقل ونباتات أقل. وهذا يعني أن الأرض جافة ويمكن للرياح أن تعصف بالرمال." الأشياء التي كانت تحت الأرض تظهر على السطح. هذا جيد لعلماء الآثار ولكنه سيء للكويت."

تغير المناخ  
سطح

جاف  
كوكب

تعصف / تهب (الرياح)



"Later everyone is getting ready to go home.

"Thanks for showing us the dinosaur, Uncle Youssef." says Ramy

"It was so interesting. I would love to be an archaeologist. It's such a cool job!"

في وقت لاحق يستعد الجميع للعودة إلى المنزل.

يقول رامي "شكراً للسماح برؤية الديناصور يا عم يوسف. لقد كان شيقاً للغاية. أريد أن أصبح عالم آثار. يا له من عمل رائع!"

"It's **fascinating**<sup>(1)</sup> work, but it's hard," says Uncle Youssef. "Sometimes we look for years and don't find anything."

"We can help if you're looking for other dinosaurs!" says Malak.

يقول العم يوسف "إنه عمل رائع، لكنه شاق." "في بعض الأحيان نبحث لسنوات ولا نجد شيئاً." نقول ملك "يمكننا المساعدة إذا كنت تبحث عن ديناصورات أخرى!"

"Thanks for all the **delicious**<sup>(2)</sup> food." says Mom. "It was lovely to see you both again."

"Thank you dear. Come back and see us soon." says Grandma.

يقول الأم "شكراً على كل الطعام اللذيذ. كان من الرائع أن أراكما مرة أخرى."

نقول الحدة "شكراً لك عزيزتي. تعالى لزيارتنا قريباً."

رائع

لذيذ





"So, did you enjoy our trip?" asks Mom in the car.

"Yes, I thought it was fantastic." says Ramy. "Me too!" says Malak.

تسأل الأم في السيارة "إذن، هل استمتعتم برحلتنا؟"

يقول رامي "نعم، اعتقد انها كانت رائعة." تقول ملك "وانا ايضا!"

"What do you think you learned from it?" asks Dad.

Ramy says, "I learned it's important to look around us carefully and notice things in our **environment**!"

"Yes, that is how you can discover interesting things." adds Malak.

"You're right, kids" says Dad. "Well done!"

يسأل الأب "ماذا تعلمتما منها في رايكما؟"

يقول رامي "تعلمت أنه من المهم أن ننظر حولنا بعناية وأن نلاحظ الأشياء في بيئتنا."

تضيف ملك "نعم، هذه هي الطريقة التي يمكنك من خلالها اكتشاف أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام."

يقول الأب "انتم على حق يا اولاد، احسبتم!"

# 1 Label the people with the names in the box:

اكتب أسماء الشخصيات من القائمة تحت الصور:

Mom - Ramy - Grandma - Grandpa - Dad - Malak - Uncle Youssef

1



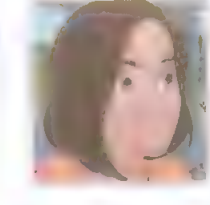
.....

2



.....

3



.....

4



.....

5



.....

6



.....

7



.....

## 2 Read. Decide if the sentences are True (T) or False (F).

### Correct the false sentences in your notebook

اقرأ. قرر إذا كانت الجمل صحيحة أم خطأ. صحح الجمل الخطأ:

1. Mom sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the newspaper. ( F )

Dad sees the story about the dinosaur skeleton in the newspaper.

2. The dinosaur skeleton is near their house. ( )

3. Uncle Youssef is a farmer. ( )

4. Mom loves looking at birds. ( )

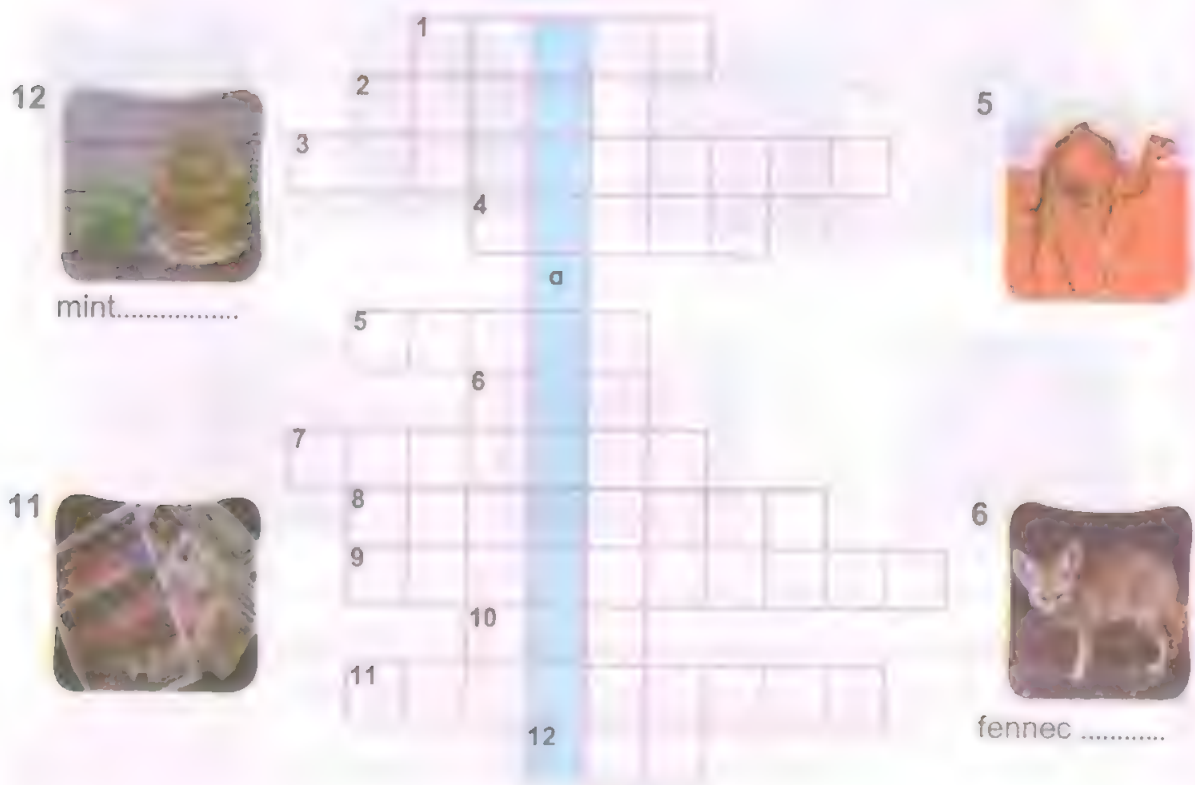
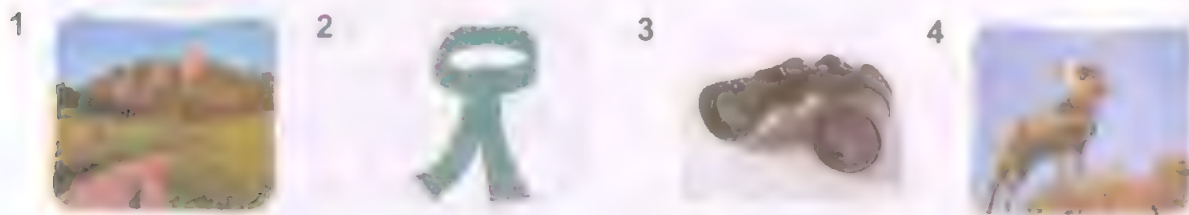
5. Ramy finds dinosaur bones. ( )

6. They go to Uncle Youssef's office. ( )



## The Reader

3 Complete the puzzle with words from the story. What's the word in yellow?  
أكمل اللغز بكلمات من القصة. ما هي الكلمة باللون الأصفر؟



## A Fantastic Family Adventure

4 Look and number in order! أنظر ورقم بالترتيب:



5 Read and match to make sentences: اقرأ وصل لتكوين جمل:

1 Dad reads a story

2 The children's grandparents

3 Ramy finds old bones

4 Uncle Youssef invites

5 Ramy wants to be

a. live near the archaeological dig.

b. the family to the dig.

c. about a dinosaur in the newspaper.

d. an archaeologist in the future.

e. in some rocks near the trail.



## The Reader

- ① Work with a partner. Retell the story by looking at the pictures in Exercise 4 and using your answers to Exercise 5. What is your favorite scene? Why?

اعمل مع زميلك. أعد سرد القصة بالنظر إلى الصور في التمرين ٤ واستخدم الإجابات في التمرين ٥. ما هو مشهدك المفضل؟ لماذا؟

- ⑦ Read and complete the story summary with the words in the box. اقرأ وأكمل ملخص القصة بالكلمات في القائمة:

ibex - rocks - next - trail - invites - dig - fun - Dad -  
skeleton - Grandma

At home, Dad reads a newspaper story about a dinosaur ② ..... He's very excited because Uncle Youssef is working on the archaeological ③ ..... At dinnertime, he suggests to the family that they visit ④ ....., who lives near the dig. The family loves the idea and they travel to see them the ⑤ ..... day. Grandma and Grandpa are very happy to see them. The family go on a nature ⑥ ..... and see lots of beautiful animals and birds. Ramy sees some bones in the ⑦ ..... and he thinks they are dinosaur bones. Uncle Youssef checks the rocks and says they are not dinosaur bones, but probably from an ⑧ ..... He says it is a very good thing that Ramy is taking time to notice things on the trail. He also ⑨ ..... them to go to his archaeological dig, which they think is a lot of ⑩ .....

- ⑧ Work with a partner. Discuss the questions:

إعمل مع زميلك. ناقش الأسئلة:

1. Why is it important to look carefully at the world around you?
2. What information can archaeology give us?
3. Why is archaeology an important activity in Egypt?
4. Why are dinosaur skeletons interesting? What can they tell us?

## General Activities

تدريبات شاملة على منهج الفصل الدراسي الثاني

### Activity ①

- ① Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

- |   | True | False |
|---|------|-------|
| ① Ancient Egyptians made their homes near the sea.  |      |       |
| ② They used mud from the river.                     |      |       |
| ③ They used wood to make bricks for their houses.   |      |       |
| ④ Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes hot. |      |       |

- ② Listen and complete: استمع واكمل:

1. Leila is in ..... now.
2. Leila's family arrived last .....
3. Leila's family traveled by .....
4. Leila's family visited temples and .....

- ③ Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

- | A                           | B   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| ① How many glasses of water | Ⓐ to keep their homes cool.                   |
| ② I could speak French      | Ⓑ for your health?                            |
| ③ The Egyptian tortoise is  | Ⓒ got a cough.                                |
| ④ Why is water important    | Ⓓ do you drink every day?                     |
| ⑤ Ancient Egyptians wanted  | Ⓔ one of the smallest tortoises in the world. |
|                             | Ⓕ when I lived in France.                     |

- ④ Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

Last summer in August, I was sitting by the window in the evening, reading a story. Suddenly, I heard a strange sound coming from my garden. I was scared. I couldn't see anything because it was too dark. I called my parents and went out to the garden with a torch. I found my neighbor's dog. It jumped into our garden. I gave it food and water and took it to my neighbor, Mr Essam. He's a vet and looks after many animals. He thanked and invited me to have dinner with him.



## General Activities

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The writer couldn't see anything because it was .....  
☐ a cold      ☐ b light      ☐ c dark      ☐ d raining
- The underlined word "it" refers to the .....  
☐ a dog      ☐ b garden      ☐ c story      ☐ d torch

### B. Answer the following questions:

- What's Mr Essam's job? .....
- Why was the writer scared? .....

### 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- about - What's - this - new - better - apartment? .....
- works - food - in - My uncle - a big - factory. ....
- traveling - She - to - plane - Canada - is - by. ....
- did - you - When - friend - meet - your? .....

### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- what about the bedrooms .....
- dina likes the new apartment .....

### 7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

A good swimmer

pool - well



## Activity 2

### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):



	True	False
1 Last week, I had a wonderful day out.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 I had a wonderful day out with my friends.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 I could see lions through the trees.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 The kangaroos could sit outside their mom's pouch.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

## General Activities

استمع واكمل:



### 2 Listen and complete:

- Tamer lives in .....
- He likes his ..... very much.
- There's a lot to see and ..... there.
- Alexandria has wonderful .....

### 3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <input type="checkbox"/> 1 Ali's watch is very       | <input type="checkbox"/> a exciting place.              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 2 Where does our water      | <input type="checkbox"/> b poisonous.                   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 3 Be careful! That snake is | <input type="checkbox"/> c. a new job.                  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 4 Alexandria is a really    | <input type="checkbox"/> d. live in your old apartment? |
| <input type="checkbox"/> 5 How long did you          | <input type="checkbox"/> e expensive.                   |
|  | <input type="checkbox"/> f. come from?                  |

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ القطعة وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Hi, my name's Maria. I'm thirteen years old. I don't live in a village or a city like many other children. I live on a boat in the sea near India. I don't walk or ride a bike to school because my school is on a boat, too. My friends and I swim to school every morning. At school we build boats and learn how to catch fish. I'm very good at swimming and I can swim in very deep water to catch big fish. Tomorrow, I'm going with my family to the city to sell fish in the market. I'm excited to see houses and shops there.

### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Maria and her friends ..... to school every morning.  
☐ a swim      ☐ b cycle      ☐ c walk      ☐ d fly
- Maria is ..... to see the city.  
☐ a sad      ☐ b excited      ☐ c unhappy      ☐ d bored

### B. Answer the following questions:

- What does Maria learn at school? .....
- Where is Maria going with her family tomorrow? .....

### 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- friend - person - is - My - a nice. ....
- you - Are - lost ? .....



## General Activities

3. visit - can - museums - How many - you - on - this trip? -----  
4. legs - I - or - have - don't - arms. -----

## 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i love my bedroom -----  
2. where is the bank -----

## 7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

airports library

don't run - librarian



## Activity 3

### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

1 My friends and I like going to the sports club.

True False

2 We have swimming lessons in the club once a week.

3 My uncle is a good swimmer .

4 My uncle helps us to learn how to play football.

### 2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

1. Nagy lives in a small ..... near Cairo.  
2. He has a ..... time there.  
3. There are a few ..... and houses.  
4. Everyone who lives here is really .....

## General Activities

اقرأ وصل:

### 3 Read and match (A) with (B):

- A  
1 My sister  
2 What's your favorite  
3 Dinosaurs were  
4 Don't eat  
5 Hieroglyphics are

- B  
a. very big animals.  
b. in the library!  
c. Ancient Egyptian writing.  
d. information about their life.  
e. unusual animal?  
f. sings badly.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

I went with my friend Hisham to the theme park on vacation. We went on different rides. The weather was nice. We had lunch and ice cream. We took lots of photos with my phone. We had a wonderful time. Then, we went home by taxi at five o'clock.

#### A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They took lots of photos with the writer's .....  
a camera b tablet c phone d computer  
2. They went home by .....  
a car b taxi c metro d bus

#### B. Answer the following questions:

3. Who did the writer go with at the theme park? -----  
4. What could they see at the theme park? -----

### 5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. movies - going- How about - the - to - tonight? -----  
2. in - Do - a house - you - or - live - an apartment? -----  
3. trees - lots of- It's - to - plant - important. -----  
4. beans - the - Give - sacks - me - of. -----

### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. they came here by airplane

2. how long did you live here



## General Activities

- 7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:  
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

Natural resources

sunlight - stones



## Activity 4

- 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):  
استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

1 My father's farm is near Aswan.

2 My father has a white galabeya.

3 He eats his breakfast after going to his work.

4 He has animals on his farm.

True False

- 2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

1. Noura was in the ..... Sea.

2. She arrived on the .....

3. She went on a .....

4. She sat around a .....

- 3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

- 1 What's  
2 Last year, he could  
3 I have a cut  
4 A tusk is a  
5 Ancient Egyptians wanted to

B

- a. long pointed stick.  
b. keep their homes cool.  
c. lived in France.  
d. run very quickly.  
e. the matter?  
f. on my arm.

## General Activities

- 4 Read the text and answer the questions:  
اقرأ القطعة واجيب عن الأسئلة:

My friend Noha got up late yesterday because she stayed up at night watching TV. She ran quickly to wear her school uniform. It was eight o'clock. She took her school bag and didn't take any food with her. She rode the bus. When she arrived at school, she found there were no pupils at school. She remembered it was Friday.

- A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Noha didn't take any ..... with her to school.

a uniforms b foods c TVs d bags

2. Noha remembered that yesterday was .....

a Monday b Tuesday c Friday d Sunday

- B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why did Noha get up late yesterday? .....

4. How did Noha get to school? .....

- 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. with - I - my - share - sister - a room. ....

2. important - trees - Why - for - are - animals? ....

3. Fares - How - feel - does - today? ....

4. cities - of - the most - This is - one - exciting. ....

- 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. I didn't arrive on time

2. what did they use mud bricks for

- 7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:  
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

A headache

doctor's - pills





## Activity 5

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

- 1 I had a lovely day last week.
- 2 I traveled to Alexandria with dad.
- 3 I traveled to Alexandria to see my aunt.
- 4 We went by train.

True False

2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل

1. The email was from.....
2. He is traveling around the world with his.....
3. They were in ..... last week.
4. He sent me nice .....

3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p><b>A</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 An ibex is a type of</li> <li>2 An archaeologist is</li> <li>3 A stream is</li> <li>4 I couldn't take the bus so</li> <li>5 It's important to</li> </ol> | <p><b>B</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a plant lots of trees.</li> <li>b the traffic light is red.</li> <li>c desert animal like a gazelle.</li> <li>d someone who digs underground.</li> <li>e like a river, but smaller.</li> <li>f I had to walk.</li> </ol> |
|---|---|

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ القطعة واجب عن الأسئلة:

I like eating honey for breakfast. I have many jars of honey in my kitchen. It's very useful. We can put honey in some food like sweet basbousa. It is also used as a treatment for some injuries. When you cough, you can mix honey with lemon to get better. You can drink honey with lemon when you have a cold, too.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you have a cold, you can mix honey with .....  
 a tea      b lemon      c juice      d water
2. The underlined word "It" refers to .....  
 a honey      b food      c lemon      d milk

B. Answer the following questions:

3. When do you eat honey? .....
4. Why is honey useful? .....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات للكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. have - Do - a sore - you - throat? .....
2. the - grow - Does - farmer - vegetables? .....
3. fast - car - drove - She - the - too. ....
4. to - I - elephants - see - and - want - lions. ....

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. he could read and write .....
2. what s the matter? .....

7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

The River Nile

banks - two branches



## Activity 6

1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)

True False

- 1 New Alamein is a very famous village in Egypt.
- 2 There are many exciting things to do in it.
- 3 The city is on the river.
- 4 Next summer, I will visit it with my family.



## 2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

1. Magdy is writing from a nature .....
2. Magdy packed good ..... shoes.
3. There are unusual ..... and trees.
4. Magdy was lucky enough to see a ..... fox.

## 3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

- 1 Yesterday, they
- 2 Wael swims well.
- 3 Where are
- 4 There is a big train
- 5 What book are

B

- a. they going?
- b. about 36 degrees.
- c. went to a museum.
- d. station in our town.
- e. you reading?
- f. He is a good swimmer.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

I live in a big and modern city. Its streets are big and clean. It has a lot of shops in a big mall. It has hospitals, schools and restaurants, too. There are places of fun like cinemas, clubs and parks. Our city is beautiful. It has a long river. It goes from south to north. There are some bridges to cross from side to side over the river. Many people from different countries come to our city. They stay in hotels, eat in our restaurants and spend nice time on the river bank.

## A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. People spend their time on the ..... banks.  
☐ a river    ☐ b ocean    ☐ c sea    ☐ d lake
2. The streets of the city are .....  
☐ a clean    ☐ b dirty    ☐ c crowded    ☐ d small

## B- Answer the following questions:

3. What are the fun places in the city? .....
4. Where do people from different countries stay? .....

## 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. did - at - When - you - the airport - arrive? .....
2. your - animal - favorite - What's - unusual? .....
3. glasses - I - of - drink - water - eight - a day. ....
4. and - Stop - noise - listen to - making - me. ....

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

## 6 Punctuate the following:

1. i don't have a headache .....
2. what do you learn at the library .....

## 7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

The kangaroo

- 1- Where does it live?
- 2- How does it walk?



## Activity 7

## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

- 1 Yesterday, Hany went to a wild park.
- 2 Hany went to a wild park with his friends.
- 3 They saw lots of different animals.
- 4 Hany is doing a project on bats at school.

True False

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

## 2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

1. .... has a new house.
2. Amal lived in the old house for ..... years.
3. The new house has more .....
4. The ..... is bigger.



## General Activities

### 3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

- 1 I don't have
- 2 Do you need
- 3 Yesterday, we went
- 4 Unsafe means
- 5 How long did you

B

- a. on a boat trip.
- b. live in your old apartment?
- c. dangerous.
- d. sad.
- e. a headache.
- f. any help?

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My family and I went to the zoo once a month. We usually arrived at the zoo at ten o'clock. We went round and saw the animals and birds. I liked to play with monkeys. I didn't like lions. My sister rode the elephant. My father gave the giraffes some carrots to eat. We had lunch at three o'clock. We went home at five o'clock.

#### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The father gave the giraffes some .....  
a meat      b carrots      c bread      d cakes
2. They went to the zoo once a .....  
a week      b month      c year      d day

#### B- Answer the following questions:

3. What did the sister ride? .....
4. When did they go back home? .....

### 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملًا صحيحة:

1. had - houses - a special - Egyptian - style. ....
2. to - the - go - we - Children's - can - Library? .....
3. weekend - free - are - on - you - the? .....
4. the club - on - go - We - to - Saturdays. ....

### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. i have a cut on my arm

2. is the ferry very fast

## General Activities

### 7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من 40 كلمة عن:

How Alomien

beach - International Park



## Activity 8

### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

- 1 I love my village.
- 2 My town is big and clean.
- 3 There is a big zoo near the school.
- 4 We can help to feed the animals.

True False

### 2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Emad doesn't ..... well.
2. Emad has a .....
3. Emad doesn't have a .....
4. The doctor gave Emad .....

### 3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

A

- 1 A breeze is
- 2 Do you
- 3 The opposite of usual is
- 4 Gabi offered to
- 5 I bought some new clothes

B

- a help the villager.
- b from the shopping mall.
- c have a toothache?
- d Stay home.
- e a little wind.
- f unusual.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Rasha and Laila visited their grandmother on her birthday. They had cards and balloons for her. Mother made a beautiful cake and the father bought a blue necklace. They went to their grandmother's house by car.

Rover, their dog, couldn't go with them because the car is very small. Grandmother liked the balloons and the cakes. She thanked the father for the beautiful necklace. Grandmother was very happy. It was a very nice birthday.

#### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The father bought a ..... necklace.  
☐ a red ☐ b yellow ☐ c white ☐ d blue
- They went to the grandmother's house by .....  
☐ a train ☐ b car ☐ c taxi ☐ d metro

#### B- Answer the following questions:

- Why didn't Rover go with them? .....
- What did Rasha and Laila have for their grandmother? .....

#### 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

- yesterday - lovely - We - had - a - day. ....
- from - things - Antiques - daily - are - life. ....
- you - we - 7 am - pick up - Should - at? .....
- Nader - have - Does - headache - a? .....

#### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- I live in giza .....
- where does water come from .....

#### 7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

#### A house in Ancient Egypt

- What did they use to build it?
- Where did they sleep?



## Activity 9

#### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False): استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

- |   | True                     | False                    |
|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 My uncle is a doctor.                                   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 My uncle loves animals.                                 | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 My uncle loved London because the people were friendly. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 London is quiet and clean.                              | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |

#### 2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:

- The Ancient Egyptians were ..... 2. The ..... was in charge.
- The nobles collected .....
- Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt .....

#### 3 Read and match (A) with (B): اقرأ وصل:

- | A  | B   |
|--|---|
| 1 Unfriendly means                               | <input type="radio"/> a. He was very sad.     |
| 2 His cat died last week.                        | <input type="radio"/> b. at the club?         |
| 3 How do   | <input type="radio"/> c. leaves.              |
| <input type="checkbox"/> A rock is hard.         | <input type="radio"/> d. you feel?            |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Did you have a good day | <input type="radio"/> e. It is a large stone. |
|  | <input type="radio"/> f. not kind to someone. |

#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

A fox was walking through a wood. The fox was hungry. It saw a bird in a tree. The bird had a piece of meat in its mouth. The fox was very clever and asked the bird to sing a song. The bird opened its mouth to sing. The meat fell out. The fox caught the meat and ate it. Then, it ran away.

#### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

- The fox saw a ..... in the tree.  
☐ a bird ☐ b singer ☐ c piece of meat ☐ d cat
- The bird opened its mouth to .....  
☐ a talk ☐ b sing ☐ c eat ☐ d fall



## General Activities

### B- Answer the following questions:

3. Was the fox hungry? .....

4. Where was the fox walking? .....

### 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. visit - at - you - Al-Azhar Park - night - Did? .....

2. last - cut - week- my - I - knee. ....

3. in - I - the - fell - playground - over. ....

4. when - a bike - you - Could you - ride - were - three? .....

### 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للاتي:

1. where does rain fall from .....

2. my cousin is a very good boy .....

### 7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

snorkeling - colored fish

## Activity 10

### 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ):

1 We went to a school trip to Wadi El Rayan.

2 The waterfalls are seventy-six meters high.

3 There are different birds there.

4 There's no sound of the falling water.

True False

## General Activities

استمع واكمل:

### 2 Listen and complete:

1. I like reading about .....

2. I read a book about the .....

3. It's got a lovely, friendly .....

4. It spends many hours eating .....

### 3 Read and match (A) with (B):

اقرأ وصل:

1 He did his

2 What are you taking

3 A tree is a very

4 A village is much

5 Cairo is a famous

a tall plant with branches

b smaller than a town or city.

c city in Egypt.

d didn't need any help.

e homework happily.

f on the Red Sea Mountain Trail?

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

My aunt Nagwa doesn't have children. She likes keeping pets at her house. Her house is big. She has two pets; a cat and a dog. She keeps her cat in a small room in her house and the dog has a little box in the garden. The cat's name is Bagy and the dog's name is Rama. Aunt Nagwa looks after her pets. She feeds and cleans her pets every day. Then, they walk with her in the garden.

### A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Aunt Nagwa has two .....

a children

b pets

c sons

d cousins

2. There's a ..... in aunt Nagwa's house.

a garden

b farm

c river

d shop

### B- Answer the following questions:

3. How does aunt Nagwa look after pets? .....

4. What's the dog's name? .....

### 5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. all - My - traveled - over - dad - Egypt. ....

2. book - to - its - Return - the - place. ....

3. eat - did - park - Where - in the - they? .....

4. next - start - our - at 2 pm - Does - class? .....



## B Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. what's his favorite unusual animal .....
2. i have an earache .....

## 7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

Al-Azhar park

picnic - bench



## Activity 11

## 1 Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

استمع واكتب (صواب) أو (خطأ)



True False

1. Playing football in the street has pros and cons.
2. Playing in the street is dangerous for children.
3. You can play in the street when it's raining.
4. The best place to play football is in the club.


## 2 Listen and complete:

استمع واكمل:



1. The building is very .....
2. The apartment is in .....
3. My father will buy new .....
4. The building is in front of the .....

اقرأ وصل:

## 3 Read and match (A) with (B):

1. My friend is
2. Many tourists come
3. My uncle works in
4. Adam drove
5. I go swimming

- a. on Mondays.
- b. the car fast.
- c. exercise again.
- d. a nice person.
- e. a big food factory in Tanta.
- f. to visit Egypt.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص ثم أجب عن الأسئلة:

Lions are strong animals. They live in Africa. You can see them in the zoo and the circus, too. They look like very big cats. They have sharp teeth and claws. They eat meat. We can't go near them. At the circus, they can do many shows. I enjoy watching them.

## A- Choose the right answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The passage is about the .....  
 a penguin      b lion      c rabbit      d dog
2. The underlined word "them" refers to the .....  
 a animals      b cats      c lions      d teeth

## B- Answer the following questions:

3. What do lions eat? .....
4. Where do lions live? .....

## 5 Rearrange the words to make correct sentences:

أعد ترتيب الكلمات لتكوين جملاً صحيحة:

1. to - Don't - your - be - unkind - friends. ....
2. the - What - matter - is - , Dina? ....
3. near - go - Could - the - you - lions? ....
4. places - park - You - in - mustn't - wrong. ....

## 6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1. who is from Alexandria
2. this is the egyptian Museum.



## General Activities

- 7 Write a paragraph of FORTY (40) words using the following guiding elements:  
اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤٠ كلمة عن:

unusual - Netherlands



## Al Azhar Activity 12

الأزهر الشريف

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختر:

1. Menna is in primary .....  
2. My mother is a .....

(five - two - four)  
(vet - doctor - teacher)

- 2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

animals - go - zoo

- A : Where did you ..... last Friday?  
B : I went to the .....  
A : What did you see?  
B : I saw some .....

- 3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

Egypt is a great country. People in Egypt are very kind. Tourists come to Egypt from everywhere. They go to Giza to see the Pyramids. In Alexandria, they visit the Alexandria Library. I love Egypt very much.

- Choose the correct answer:

1. Egypt is a great .....  
2. People in Egypt are very .....  
3. .... come to Egypt from everywhere.  
4. Tourists go to Giza to see the .....  
5. In Alexandria, they visit the Alexandria .....

(village - town - country)  
(unkind - kind - bad)  
(Farmers - Doctors - Tourists)  
(Pyramids - museum - zoo)  
(park - farm - Library)

- 4 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Yesterday, I ..... to the park.

a go b went c going

## General Activities

2. .... falls from clouds.  
a Rain b Tea c Milk  
3. .... eat in the library, please.  
a Doesn't b Didn't c Don't  
4. Ahmed swims well. He is a good .....  
a swimmer b footballer c vet  
5. We go to the club ..... Fridays.  
a at b in c on

- 5 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Dad reads a story about a ..... in the newspaper.  
a cat b lion c dinosaur  
2. Ramy finds old ..... in the rocks near the trail.  
a bones b coins c photos

- 6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن:

A visit to Alexandria Library



## Al Azhar Activity 13

الأزهر الشريف

- 1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختر:

1. Ramy went for a trip to .....  
2. Ramy saw some famous .....  
(Cairo - London - France)  
(sights - places - rivers)

- 2 Read and complete the dialog:

اقرأ وأكمل:

theme - on - should

- A : Are you free ..... the weekend?  
B : Sure. What ..... we do?  
A : My mom wants to go to the ..... park.  
B : That sounds fun.



### 3 Read and choose the correct answer: اقرأ واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

In summer holidays, my friends like to visit a lot of places. They went to Cairo last summer holiday. They traveled by train. They visited many places. They visited the museum and saw a lot of old things. They were very happy.

#### Choose the correct answer:

- In ..... holidays, my friends like to visit a lot of places. (winter - summer - spring)
- They went to ..... last summer holiday. (Aswan - Alexandria - Cairo)
- They traveled by ..... (car - train - bus)
- They visited the ..... (zoo - pyramids - museum)
- They were very ..... (happy - sad - unhappy)

### 4 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- They ..... have a toothache.  
☐ a isn't      ☐ b don't      ☐ c doesn't
- I went to the wildlife .....  
☐ a school      ☐ b park      ☐ c hospital
- What did you .....?  
☐ a see      ☐ b saw      ☐ c sees
- She goes to the library to ..... stories.  
☐ a eat      ☐ b play      ☐ c read
- I'm very .....  
☐ a tire      ☐ b tired      ☐ c tiring

#### E- The Reader

### 5 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- Ramy wants to be an ..... in the future.  
☐ a doctor      ☐ b archaeologist      ☐ c teacher
- ..... were very big animals.  
☐ a Cats      ☐ b Rats      ☐ c Dinosaurs

### 6 Write a short paragraph of FOUR (4) sentences about:

اكتب فقرة إنشائية من ٤ جمل عن:

#### My bedroom



## 14 امتحان دمج

### A. Reading (20 Marks)

### 1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text: (8 Marks)

اقرأ واختر الإجابة لتكملة النص:

My name is Salma. I live in a big house with my ..... (family - friends - teachers - doctors). There are three ..... (bedrooms - bathroom - kitchen - bedroom) in my house. My bedroom is very beautiful. We watch TV in a big ..... (bedroom - bathroom - living room - kitchen). The kitchen is next ..... (to - on - in - at) the toilet.

### 2 Read and match (A) with (B): (6 Marks)

اقرأ وصل:

- | A                           |                       | B                        |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 When you have a headache, | <input type="radio"/> | a. pictures and symbols. |
| 2 In Ancient Egypt, scribes | <input type="radio"/> | b. in the classroom.     |
| 3 A teacher helps us        | <input type="radio"/> | c. garden of my hotel.   |
| 4 Hieroglyphics are         | <input type="radio"/> | d. could write and read. |
| 5 A rock is hard.           | <input type="radio"/> | e. It is a large stone.  |
|                             | <input type="radio"/> | f. your head hurts.      |

### 3 Read the text and answer the questions: (6 Marks)

اقرأ واجب عن الاسئلة:

Last summer, I went with my family to the park. We took our sandwiches, apples, and orange juice. While we were enjoying our picnic lunch under a tree, a small grey mouse came very close to us. Suddenly, this mouse grabbed my delicious piece of apple off my plate and ran away.

#### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Last summer, we went to the .....  
☐ a school      ☐ b hospital      ☐ c park      ☐ d beach



## General Activities

2. We took our sandwiches and .....

- ☐ a bananas    ☐ b pineapples    ☐ c apples    ☐ d carrots

3. A small ..... came while we were eating lunch.

- ☐ a cat    ☐ b mouse    ☐ c mouth    ☐ d dog

4. The mouse grabbed a piece of ..... off my plate.

- ☐ a apple    ☐ b sandwich    ☐ c banana    ☐ d mango

## B. Writing (10 Marks)

Choose the correct form of the following sentences: (4 Marks)

اختر الجملة الصحيحة:

1- my - to - new - Welcome - apartment.

- ☐ a Welcome my apartment to new.  
☐ b Welcome new to apartment my.  
☐ c Welcome to my new apartment.

2- have - Do - a sore - you - throat?

- ☐ a Do you have a sore throat?  
☐ b Do throat have you a sore?  
☐ c Do a sore have throat you?

Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c, or d: (6 Marks)

اختر ورتب لعمل فقرة انشائية:

- ☐ a (.....) I will go to Alexandria.  
☐ b (.....) My holiday is next week.  
☐ c (.....) We will go to the beach.  
☐ d (.....) I will go there with my family.

## Listening Material (Exercises & Tests)



نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع الواردة في الوحدات والاختبارات

### Unit 7

#### LESSON 1

- Listen and complete:

My name is Fatma. I live in a modern apartment. There are four rooms in the apartment. The living room is next to the bedroom. I have three armchairs in the living room. The kitchen is big. I bake bread in the oven.

#### LESSON 2

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

The Nile was very important in Ancient Egypt. Ancient Egyptians used it to travel from one place to another. They used mud bricks from the Nile to build their houses. All the roofs in Ancient Egypt were flat. These were the coolest part of the house. Ancient Egyptians sat and slept on reed mats. They used papyrus to cover the windows and doors. This kept the insects outside.

#### LESSON 3

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

I'm Dalia. I went to my uncle's farm yesterday. He lives in an old farmhouse. He keeps many animals. He has cows, chickens, goats and sheep. I played with the goats. They were very funny. My uncle grows wheat and tomatoes. The fields are brilliant. I enjoyed my day.

### Al-Azhar Activity

1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

My uncle is a vet. He loves animals. He has two children. His wife is a teacher. They are happy.

### Activity Unit 7

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

My name is Ahmed. I live in a big house with my parents and my sister Fatma. I love my bedroom. I share it with my sister. My bedroom is white and green.

There is my bed with a desk next to it. On the wall, there are lots of posters of animals.

2- Listen and complete:

Zizo: Where do you live?

Ezz: I live in an apartment with three rooms.

Zizo: What do you have in the living room?

Ezz: I have a television, two armchairs and a sofa.

Zizo: Do you have an elevator in the building?

Ezz: Yes, I have.

### Unit 8

#### LESSON 1

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

My friend Amr didn't go to the club yesterday. He had a cold. He has a sore throat. He didn't come to the football practice. He went to the doctor's. The doctor told him to have hot drinks. Amr should stay home.

#### LESSON 2

- Listen and complete:

Amr: Where did you go yesterday?

Hani: I went to the zoo.

Amr: What did you see there?

Hani: I saw a lot of animals.

Amr: What animal did you like?

Hani: I liked the lion. I took many photos.

#### LESSON 3

- Listen and complete:

My friend Hazem was ill yesterday. He went to the doctor's. Hazem had a stomachache. His stomach hurts. The doctor said to him to stay home. Hazem took the medicine and felt well.

#### LESSON 4

- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

My Name is Doha. I like honey very much. When I have a sore throat, I have honey with lemon. Honey is very useful. It's used as a treatment. Honey is the sweetest substance on Earth. Some types of honey can kill bacteria.

### LESSONS 1-2-3-4

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

I'm Soha. I eat healthy foods. I have a balanced diet. I eat vegetables and fruit. I do exercise every day. I walk to school. I spend time with my friends. My friends are healthy. They keep their body moving.

### Al-Azhar Activity

1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

I get up at six o'clock. I have my breakfast with my parents. I like honey. Honey has been used by doctors for thousands of years.



## Activity Unit 8

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

I like healthy food. It is really important to eat healthy food like fruit and vegetables. We should do some exercise every day. It's very important to keep our body moving. Playing sports at school or with friends is a good way to exercise.

## 2- Listen and complete:

I'm Adel. My brother Fares didn't go to school yesterday. He was ill. He had an earache from swimming. He went to swimming practice last Monday. He went to the doctor. The doctor told him to stay home. Fares took medicine.

## Unit 9

## LESSON 1

## - Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

My uncle has a parrot in his house. It's colorful. Its name is Pingo. My uncle puts food and water for Pingo every day. The parrot can talk and repeat what we say. It has a beautiful beak and feathers.

## LESSON 2

## - Listen and complete:

When I was five, I could swim and talk. My brother was two years younger than me. He couldn't talk or walk, but he could listen to music. Now, I'm ten years old. I can use a computer. I can play chess, too. My brother is eight years old. He can swim and sing.

## LESSON 3

## - Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Water is very important in our life. We can't live without it. We need water for drinking, having showers, plants, washing and swimming. We must save water. We shouldn't use too much water. We should turn off the faucet after finishing our things.

## LESSON 4

## - Listen and complete:

My father is a vet. He lives in a village. Yesterday, he woke up early and wore his vest. He saw a wet cat in the street. He took it and put it in his van. He gave it water and food. The cat was very happy.

## LESSON 5

## - Listen and complete:

**Manal** : What are you watching on TV?

**Salma** : A programme about unusual animals.

**Manal** : What's your favorite unusual animal?

**Salma** : It's the dugong.

**Manal** : What is this strange animal?

**Salma** : It lives in the sea and its nickname is the sea cow.

## Al-Azhar Activity

## 1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

I like birds. My favorite bird is the parrot. It is so beautiful and it can talk. I say some words for it to repeat.

## Activity Unit 9

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

My favorite animal is the penguin. It lives in the ocean. It's a friendly animal. It swims in a group with his family. It looks cute and cold. It eats fish. I did a project about the penguin at school. My science teacher was very happy about my project.

## 2- Listen and complete:

**Tarek** : What do you know about jobs in the Ancient Egyptian society?

**Emad** : There were many jobs in the Ancient Egypt.

**Tarek** : What job would you like in Ancient Egypt?

**Emad** : I would like to be a soldier.

**Tarek** : Why do you like this job?

**Emad** : Because soldiers kept Ancient Egyptians safe and guarded the kingdom, too.

## Review 3

## Activity on units 7, 8 &amp; 9

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

I'm Dina. I live in Giza. When my parents had to move to a new job, we moved to a closer apartment. It's a bigger apartment. It has more rooms. The kitchen is bigger. There's more space so we can have a bigger television. I like our new apartment.

## 2- Listen and complete:

I went to the club yesterday. I went there with my friend Omar. We played football. Omar hurt his ankle. I took him home. His parents took him to see the doctor. The doctor said he had to stay at home for a week. I hope he'll feel better soon.

## Unit 10

## LESSON 1

## - Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

My name is Adel. Every year, I go to Alexandria with my family. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. It's a very big city. We always stay in a comfortable hotel near the beach. We always have lunch at a big restaurant.

## LESSON 2

## - Listen and complete:

**Mohamed** : What are hieroglyphics?

**Salam** : They are Ancient Egyptian writing symbols and pictures.

**Mohamed** : What do monuments teach us?

**Salam** : Monuments teach us about buildings

in Ancient Egypt. They were built to celebrate important people.

**Mohamed** : Where were Pharaohs buried?

**Salma** : Pharaohs were buried in tombs.

## LESSON 3

## - Listen and complete:

We should encourage our children to visit the library and read books. The library is not the place for running or loud noises. The children should keep the library clean. They should put the books on the shelf after they read them.

## LESSONS 5 &amp; 6

## - Listen and complete:

Hi, I'm Salma! I live in a small town. I live in a big house with my parents and my brother, Mohamed. There is a park next to our house. After school, I like to play in the park with my friends. On the other side of the park is my school.

## Al-Azhar Activity

## 1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

Yesterday, I visited Alexandria with my friends. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants and museums. There's even a beach.

## Activity Unit 10

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

I'm Hany. I go to Alexandria with my friends. Alexandria is a big city. We always stay in a hotel near the train station. We always have a lunch at a big restaurant.

## 2- Listen and complete:

We should read books. If you like reading, the library is a good place for you. You shouldn't make noise in the library. You can't use your mobile phone inside the library. After reading books, you should put the books on the shelf.

## Unit 11

## LESSON 2

## - Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Ali went to the village to visit his uncle. He saw many trees. He helped his uncle to plant tomatoes. He slept on the grass.

## LESSON 2

## - Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Wadi Degla is a nice place. Wadi Degla is cool because you can see lots of animals. I want to go on a trail. I can swim at the Blue Lagoon. Next winter, I will visit Wadi Degla with my family.

## LESSON 3

## - Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Hotem is going on the Red Sea mountain Trail. He is taking many things with him. He is taking sunglasses to protect his eyes. He is taking a scarf to protect his head. He is taking some snacks. He is taking a blanket in case he gets cold. It will be a great adventure.

## LESSON 4

## - Listen and complete:

Yesterday was Friday. Amal didn't go to school. She went to her uncle's farm with his father. She played with her cousins on the farm. She saw beautiful birds singing on the tree and a brown rabbit standing quietly. Amal was very happy.

## LESSONS 5 - 6

## - Listen and complete:

I have a trip to the Red Sea tomorrow. I prepared everything. I packed my suitcase carefully. I am taking hiking shoes. I took my hat and sunglasses. I'm leaving at 7am. It will be a nice trip.

## Al-Azhar Activity

## 1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

I love Egypt. Egypt has some famous cities, Cairo, Alexandria and Hurghada. Every winter, I like to visit Hurghada with my family. The weather there is warm.

## Activity Unit 11

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Amira and Ota are friends. Amira is going on holiday to Hurghada. Ota is going to Luxor. Amira wants to go on a trip with her friends. Amira is taking some drinks.

## 2- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Omar is a clever boy. He is good at school. He is a good swimmer, too. He can swim quickly. He goes to the swimming pool every Friday. His dad always tells him to be careful. His dad sometimes goes with Omar there. Omar won a swimming race last year.

## Unit 12

## LESSON 1

## 1- Listen and complete:

I'm Osama. I went to Dubai last month. There are many high-rise buildings. I stayed in a lovely hotel room. There was a big swimming pool on the roof of the hotel. It was amazing. I went on a boat trip and went on rides at the theme park.



## LESSON 3

## 2- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Tourists visit many places in Egypt every year. They always want to check in to a comfortable hotel. They try traditional Egyptian food. They visit the Egyptian Museum. They also visit the old parts of Cairo. They like to go to Luxor and Aswan in winter.

## LESSON 4

## 1- Listen and complete:

Hani can do a lot of activities on vacation. Hani goes to Alexandria in summer. He always goes there with his family. They can see the beach as they stay in a hotel in front of the sea. They swim in the sea and make sandcastles on the beach.

## Al-Azhar Activity

## 1. Listen and choose the correct answer:

Ali is farmer. He gets up early. Ali grows vegetables and keeps animals.

## Activity Unit 12

## 2- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Ramy and Adam are friends. They are in primary five. Ramy likes playing football. He wants to play football after school on Thursday. Adam likes swimming. He goes swimming on Friday with his sister, Rawan. Ramy and Adam have a good time.

## 1- Listen and complete:

Egypt is a good destination for tourists. Millions of people visit Egypt every year. They come from all around the world. They spend their vacation in Egypt. They enjoy seeing many sights. They can see the pyramids. They can visit Luxor and Aswan.

## Review 4

## Activity on units 10, 11 &amp; 12

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Yesterday, I decided to go to on vacation to Alexandria. I like to spend my summer holiday there to enjoy swimming on the beach. I packed my suitcase. I took my swimming suit, shorts, T-shirts and my sunglasses. I stayed in a big hotel near the beach. I saw a lot of tourists there. I had a wonderful holiday.

## 2- Listen and complete:

**Ramy** : Hi, Walid. Would you like to play tennis after school?

**Walid** : No, I'm busy today. I have a dentist's appointment today.

**Ramy** : Do you have a toothache?

**Walid** : Yes, my tooth hurts!

**Ramy** : You eat a lot of chocolate.

**Emad** : I like chocolate very much.

**Ramy** : But you should eat healthy food.

## Activity 1

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

In the past, Ancient Egyptians made their homes near the Nile. They used mud from the river to make bricks for their houses. Ancient Egyptians wanted to keep their homes cool. The mud bricks helped to do this.

## 2- Listen and complete:

My name's Leila. I'm in Aswan now. I arrived with my family last Sunday. We took a train from Cairo. There is so much to see here. We visited some museums and the temples. We had an amazing tour of famous places. We went to the market. It's really fun, but very busy and crowded.

## Activity 2

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Last month, I had a wonderful day out with my family. I went to the new wildlife park. It was awesome. I could see lions through the trees. The kangaroos were interesting, too. When they were little, they could sit inside their mom's pouch.

## 2- Listen and complete:

I'm Tamer. I live in Alexandria. I like my city very much. Alexandria is a really exciting place to visit. There's a lot to see and do here! It's a big city with lots of amazing restaurants, stores, markets, and museums. It has wonderful beaches. Many people visit Alexandria in summer.

## Activity 3

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

My friends and I like going to the sports club. We have swimming lessons in the club twice a week. My uncle is a good swimmer. He helps us to learn how to swim. We should listen to him to be a good swimmer. My uncle is a kind man.

## 2- Listen and complete:

Nagy lives in a small town near Cairo. He has a lovely time here. It's peaceful and very quiet, especially at night. There are a few shops and houses. There is only one restaurant, but it's great! Everyone who lives here is really friendly.

## Activity 4

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

My father is a farmer. He has a farm near Luxor. He gets up and wears his white galabeya and black leather shoes. He eats his breakfast. Then, he goes to his farm by a tractor. He has two cows and a donkey. He works hard on his farm.

## 2- Listen and complete:

Nora was in the Red Sea. She arrived on the weekend. She went on a trail. She slept in a tent. It was quite difficult to sleep in a tent on sand! It got really cold at night. She sat around a fire. She could see a million stars! It was beautiful.

## Activity 5

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

I had a lovely day yesterday. I traveled to Alexandria with mom to see my aunt. We went by train. I love trains. My aunt took us to the Corniche. The sea was really beautiful. We were very happy.

## 2- Listen and complete:

Today I received an email from my friend Amir. He is travelling around the world with his family. They were in India last week, and this week they are in Singapore. They are going to France next week. He sent me nice photos with his family. Amir spends wonderful times.

## Activity 6

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

New Alamein is a very famous city in Egypt. There are many exciting things to do in it. The city is on the beach. There is also a large green lake right in the middle of the city. Next summer, I will visit it with my family.

## 2- Listen and complete:

Hi I'm Magdy. I'm writing from a nature trail. It's fun. Thank you for telling me to pack good hiking shoes. We have walked for many hours every day. There are amazing things to see - some unusual flowers and trees. One day, I was lucky enough to see a fennec fox and a wild cat!

## Activity 7

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Last week, Hany went to a wild park with his family. They saw lots of different animals like lions, kangaroos, and penguins. He was a bit sad that he didn't see the bats and he's doing a project on them at school.

## 2- Listen and complete:

**Amal**: Hi Azza, welcome to my new house!  
**Azza**: Thanks! Do you like living here?  
**Amal**: Yes, I love it!  
**Azza**: How long did you live in your old house?  
**Amal**: Twelve years, since I was born.  
**Azza**: So, what's better about this new house?  
**Amal**: There are more rooms and the kitchen is bigger.

## Activity 8

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

I love my town. It's big and clean. There is a big zoo right next to the school. We can go there every afternoon after classes. We can help to feed the animals. There is a big park with lots of trees so we can go there with my friends to play and eat.

## 2- Listen and complete:

**Emad** : Hello, Doctor. I don't feel well.  
**Doctor**: What's the matter, Emad?  
**Emad** : I have a cold.  
**Doctor**: Let me see. Do you have a headache?  
**Emad** : No, I don't have a headache.  
**Doctor**: OK! Stay home, sleep well, and take this medicine.

## Activity 9

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

My uncle is a scientist and loves animals. When he was younger, he traveled a lot to London for work. He loved it there because the people were very friendly and helped him with his work. London is quiet and clean.

## 2- Listen and complete:

The Ancient Egyptians were great. The person in charge was the pharaoh. The nobles collected taxes and organized soldiers. Soldiers were busy keeping Egypt safe. As Egypt was such an important and very rich country, the soldiers guarded the kingdom. The army was strong, and the soldiers were good at their jobs.

## Activity 10

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Last week, our class went on a trip to the waterfall of Wadi El Rayan. It was beautiful. The waterfalls are 67 meters high. The sound of water falling is very loud. Our teacher also told us that there are lots of different birds living there.

## 2- Listen and complete:

I like reading about animals from around the world. I read a book about the dugong. I think it's got a lovely, friendly face and it's very cute! Its nickname is the sea cow and it spends many hours eating grass from the sea bed every day.

## Activity 11

## 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

Playing football in the streets is fun, but it has pros and cons. It's dangerous for children because the cars, trucks and bikes may hit them. Another thing, it may rain and the weather may be bad. The best place to play football is in the club and you must wear the right clothes.

## 2- Listen and complete:

My family will move to a new apartment in Alexandria. The building is very tall. It's in front of the sea. Inside the apartment there are two bedrooms, a living room with a balcony, a hall, a kitchen and a bathroom. My father will buy new furniture from a famous shop. I like my new apartment.

## Al Azhar Activity 12

## 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

I'm Menna. I'm in primary five. My father is a teacher. My mother is a doctor. I have one brother. He is in primary two. We go to school together. I love my family.

## Al Azhar Activity 13

## 1- Listen and choose the correct answer:

My name is Ramy. I went for a trip to France. I saw some famous sights like the Eiffel Tower. It was a wonderful trip.



# Students' Book Listening Material

نصوص الاستماع الواردة في كتاب الطالب



## Unit 7

### LESSON 4

**Narrator:** Student's Book, Unit 7, Lesson 4, page 12, Exercise 2. Listen and repeat the words in Exercise 1.

- |          |           |          |
|----------|-----------|----------|
| 1- tree  | 2- spoon  | 3- sheep |
| 4- roof  | 5- school | 6- seed  |
| 7- queen | 8- pool   |          |

## Unit 8

### LESSON 1

TR 2.11

**Narrator:** Student's Book, Unit 8, Lesson 1, page 23 Exercise 4. Listen and check.

**Narrator:** 1

**Mom:** What's the matter, Dina?  
Do you have a toothache?

**Dina:** Yes, my tooth hurts!

**Narrator:** 2

**Boy:** Mom, can I have some milk and honey for my cough, please?

**Narrator:** 3

**Girl:** Ouch! My shoulder hurts!

**Narrator:** 4

**Mom:** What's the matter, Wael?  
Does your stomach hurt?

**Wael:** No, I have a headache.

### LESSON 4

TR 2.15

**Narrator:** Student's Book, Unit 8, Lesson 4, page 34 Exercise 1. Complete the words with "f" or "v". Then listen and say:

**Narrator:** 1

**Boy 1:** I have a pet frog.

**Narrator:** 2

**Man:** Hany is a vet.

**Narrator:** 3

**Girl 1:** I have a very long scarf.

**Narrator:** 4

**Girl 2:** Do you like vegetables?

**Narrator:** 5

**Boy 2:** I really like fruit.

**Narrator:** 6

**Boy + Girl:** We like watching television.

TR 2.16

**Narrator:** Student's Book, Unit 8, Lesson 4, page 34 Exercise 2. Read, listen and circle. Then listen again and repeat.

- |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|
| 1- fan  | 2- leaf | 3- life |
| 4- very | 4- view | 6- safe |

## Unit 9

### LESSON 4

TR 2.21

**Narrator:** Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 4, page 52, Exercise 1. Listen and repeat the words.

- |               |           |             |
|---------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1- teacher    | 2- reader | 3- climber  |
| 4- footballer | 5- farmer | 6- traveler |

TR 2.22

**Narrator:** Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 4, page 52, Exercise 2. Listen again and write the -er words. (repeat of TR 2.21)

TR 2.24

**Narrator:** Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 4, page 55, Exercise 2. Listen and circle the word you hear. Then listen again and check.

- |         |            |           |
|---------|------------|-----------|
| 1- west | 2- whale   | 3- vase   |
| 4- vet  | 5- volcano | 6- winter |

TR 2.25

**Narrator:** Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 4, page 55, Exercise 3. Listen and write the words.

- |               |          |            |
|---------------|----------|------------|
| 1- wheel      | 2- vest  | 3- volcano |
| 4- west       | 5- whale | 6- vet     |
| 7- watermelon | 8- wet   | 9- violin  |

TR 2.26

**Narrator:** Student's Book, Unit 9, Lesson 4, page 55, Exercise 4. Listen and write. Then listen again and check.

Last Wednesday I decided to travel west in my boat wearing my vest. I was looking for a volcano but I had some problems. I met some whales and they turned over my boat. I had to sit on my violin to stay afloat! I ate watermelon to stay healthy and I came to shore. I didn't find the volcano, but I met some vets and they took me home to my village!

## Review 3

### LESSON 2

TR 2.30

**Narrator:** Student's Book, Review 3, Lesson 2, page 62, Exercise 2. Put the dialog in the correct order. Listen, check, and repeat. Then act it out in pairs.

**Nurse:** Come in, Kareem. What's the matter?

**Kareem:** I've got an earache.

**Nurse:** Oh dear. Did you hit your ear with a ball?

**Kareem:** No, I had an earache when I woke up this morning.

**Nurse:** Let me see. Yes, it is red inside. I think you should go home. I'll telephone your mom.

**Kareem:** Thank you, nurse.

TR 2.31

**Narrator:** Student's Book, Review 3, Lesson 2, page 63, Exercise 4. Listen then write the words you hear. Then match the words and pictures.

- |           |            |            |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1- panda  | 2- penguin | 3- dolphin |
| 4- rabbit | 5- snail   | 6- whale   |

## Unit 10

### LESSON 1

TR 2.36

**Narrator:** Student's Book, Unit 10, Lesson 1, Page 71, Exercise 4. Listen. Match the places and people.

**Narrator:** 1 Sara

**Sara:** I'm going to visit my aunt and uncle. We're going by train.

**Narrator:** 2 Ahmed

**Ahmed:** My cousin is visiting us and we're going to show him around. He's never seen the Pyramids.

**Narrator:** 3 Dina

**Dina:** We went on a school trip to find out how cotton is turned into clothes like T-shirts and dresses.

**Narrator:** 4 Youssef

**Youssef:** I want to borrow some books.

## Unit 11

### LESSON 1

TR 2.45

**Narrator:** Student's Book, Unit 11, Lesson 1, Page 89, Exercise 3. Complete the sentences with the words from Exercise 1. Then listen and check.

1- A **stream** is like a river, but smaller.

2- I love the feeling of green **grass** under my feet.

3- A **tree** is a very tall plant with branches and wooden trunk.

4- A **village** is much smaller than a town or city.

5- It's quite difficult to climb that **hill** because it's very high.

6- Some famous **cities** in Egypt are Cairo, Alexandria, and Hurghada.

7- A **rock** is hard. It is a large stone.

8- I like growing tomato **plants** because I like eating tomatoes.

## Listening

9- That plant has flowers and lots of green **leaves**.

## Unit 12

### LESSON 4

TR 2.61

**Narrator:** Student's Book, Unit 12, Lesson 4, Page 116, Exercise 4. Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.

1- Be careful! That snake is **poisonous**.

2- Ali swims and runs. He's very **active**.

3- Everyone knows Soha. She is very **famous**.

4- His watch is very **expensive**.

## Review 4

### LESSON 1

**Narrator:** Student's Book, Review 4, Lesson 1, page 122, Exercise 1. Write the missing letters. Listen and check.

1- city      2- hill      3- stream

4- village      5- station      6- museum

7- swimming pool

8- shopping mall      9- restaurant



## إملاً هذا الكوبون

وأرفق به نسخة من امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية  
الفصل الدراسي الثاني في مدرستك  
مع ملاحظاتك ومقترحاتك على الكتاب وأرسله إلى:



قد تحصل على  
نسخة هدية

2024

6<sup>th</sup> Prim

الصف السادس الابتدائي  
الفصل الدراسي الأول



اسم التلميذ :

العنوان بالتفصيل :

محمول :

اسم مدرس اللغة الانجليزية :

محمول :

اسم المدرسة وعنوانها :

الإدارة التعليمية :

المحافظة :

التوزيع : ١٠ شارع كامل صدقي - الفجالة - القاهرة

ت : ٢٥٩١٩١٦٥

للاستعلام وإبداء الآراء والإقتراحات

الإدارة : تليفون : ٢٥٨٨٠١٠٢

دار غزة للطباعة - مدينة العبور الصناعية

تليفون : ٤٤٨١٤٦٦



دار غزة

للطباعة والنشر والتوزيع

الترخيص : ٢٣٧

رقم الإيداع : ٢٠٢٢/٢٢٦٧٧

ghazzahouse@gmail.com